

Enterprise Library Software

Managing HSC and VTCS

Version 7.1

E22915-01



April 2011, Revision 01

Submit comments about this document to STP_FEEDBACK_US@ORACLE.COM

Copyright © 2009, 2010, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

This software and related documentation are provided under a license agreement containing restrictions on use and disclosure and are protected by intellectual property laws. Except as expressly permitted in your license agreement or allowed by law, you may not use, copy, reproduce, translate, broadcast, modify, license, transmit, distribute, exhibit, perform, publish, or display any part, in any form, or by any means. Reverse engineering, disassembly, or decompilation of this software, unless required by law for interoperability, is prohibited.

The information contained herein is subject to change without notice and is not warranted to be error-free. If you find any errors, please report them to us in writing.

If this is software or related software documentation that is delivered to the U.S. Government or anyone licensing it on behalf of the U.S. Government, the following notice is applicable:

U.S. GOVERNMENT RIGHTS Programs, software, databases, and related documentation and technical data delivered to U.S. Government customers are "commercial computer software" or "commercial technical data" pursuant to the applicable Federal Acquisition Regulation and agency-specific supplemental regulations. As such, the use, duplication, disclosure, modification, and adaptation shall be subject to the restrictions and license terms set forth in the applicable Government contract, and, to the extent applicable by the terms of the Government contract, the additional rights set forth in FAR 52.227-19, Commercial Computer Software License (December 2007). Oracle USA, Inc., 500 Oracle Parkway, Redwood City, CA 94065.

This software or hardware is developed for general use in a variety of information management applications. It is not developed or intended for use in any inherently dangerous applications, including applications which may create a risk of personal injury. If you use this software or hardware in dangerous applications, then you shall be responsible to take all appropriate fail-safe, backup, redundancy, and other measures to ensure the safe use. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates disclaim any liability for any damages caused by use of this software or hardware in dangerous applications.

Oracle is a registered trademark of Oracle Corporation and/or its affiliates. Oracle and Java are registered trademarks of Oracle and/or its affiliates. Other names may be trademarks of their respective owners.

AMD, Opteron, the AMD logo, and the AMD Opteron logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Advanced Micro Devices. Intel and Intel Xeon are trademarks or registered trademarks of Intel Corporation. All SPARC trademarks are used under license and are trademarks or registered trademarks of SPARC International, Inc. UNIX is a registered trademark licensed through X/Open Company, Ltd.

This software or hardware and documentation may provide access to or information on content, products, and services from third parties. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates are not responsible for and expressly disclaim all warranties of any kind with respect to third-party content, products, and services. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates will not be responsible for any loss, costs, or damages incurred due to your access to or use of third-party content, products, or services.

Preface

Oracle's StorageTek™ Enterprise Library Software (ELS) is a solution consisting of the following base software:

- ? StorageTek™ Storage Management Component (SMC)
- ? StorageTek™ Host Software Component (HSC)
- ? StorageTek™ Virtual Tape Control Software (VTCS)
- ? StorageTek™ Concurrent Disaster Recovery Test (CDRT)

Additionally, the following software is provided with the ELS package:

- ? StorageTek™ Library Content Manager (LCM) (formerly ExLM). LCM includes an enhanced version of the product formerly known as Offsite Vault Feature.
- ? StorageTek™ Client System Component for MVS Environments (MVS/CSC)
- ? StorageTek™ LibraryStation

Refer to the publication *Introducing ELS* for an overview of the ELS solution.

Audience

This guide is for StorageTek or customer personnel who are responsible for managing ELS.

Prerequisites

To perform the tasks described in this guide, you should already understand the following:

- ? The MVS operating environment
- ? JES2 or JES3
- ? Enterprise Library Software (ELS)

About This Book

This book is designed for anybody whose job is to keep HSC and VTCS up and running. HSC/VTCS is basically a server, and like all servers, if you install and configure it correctly, construct effective policies, and provide a reasonable amount of conscientious management, it pretty much takes care of itself. HSC and VTCS share some common tasks, such as maintaining the CDS, and have some parallel but separate tasks, such as working with real volumes versus working with VTVs and MVCs. For information about managing the third member of the trio, see *Managing SMC*.

So what kind of “conscientious management” *is* required? What does it take to “manage HSC and VTCS?” The following list describes the sections of this book and the corresponding management tasks:

- ? [“The Toolkit\(s\)” on page 1](#) describes, in table format, the tools you use to manage HSC and VTCS. “The Toolkit(s)” describes the specific tasks and functions for these tools. For the details, you’ll want to have within easy reach *ELS Command, Control Statement, and Utility Reference*.
- ? [“Managing the CDS” on page 9](#) tells how to safeguard the CDS...and how to recover it if you lose one or more copies of the CDS.
- ? [“Managing a TapePlex” on page 41](#) describes the periodic and as needed tasks required to manage a TapePlex.
- ? [“Using the VTCS Dashboard” on page 73](#) talks about the tasks you need to do on an ongoing basis. In addition to monitoring the health of your VTCS system, there are several key items you’ll want to put in place, such as a Demand MVC Space Reclamation batch job.
- ? [“Working the VTCS Must Do \(Sometime\) Chores List” on page 89](#) consists of items you do for VTCS...well, as they need to be done.

There’s some overlap between periodic and as-needed management, just as there’s some overlap between these two categories and resolving problems. Most likely, if you’re scrupulous about your management tasks, you won’t *have* to resolve many problems, and vice versa. “Periodic” and “As-Needed” are two general boxes, and you have to adjust according to the needs of your shop.

- ? [“Leading Edge Solutions with Management and Storage Classes” on page 119](#) is about Management and Storage Classes, which are the basics of anything leading edge in VTCS land.
- ? [“Finding and Fixing VTCS Problems” on page 137](#) is about what to do when problems occur.
- ? [“LCM Control Statements” on page 153](#) is a handy cross-reference of things you can do with HSC that you can also do with LCM.
- ? [“Additional SLUPCOPY Information” on page 155](#) provides more information about this utility.

Contents

Preface iii

Audience iii

Prerequisites iii

About This Book iv

1. The Toolkit(s) 1

The HSC Toolkit 2

The VTCS Toolkit 6

2. Managing the CDS 9

Backing Up the CDS 10

Frequency of Backup 10

Using the SLUPCOPY Utility to Back Up the CDS 11

Requirements 11

SLUPCOPY Procedure 13

General JCL Requirements (All PIT Methods) 14

SVAA SnapShot JCL Example 16

DFSMSdss SnapShot JCL Example 19

DFSMSdss FlashCopy JCL Example 21

FDRSNAP JCL Example 23

Using the BACKUP Utility to Back Up the CDS 24

Managing CDS Logging 25

Periodically Offloading Log Files 25

Expanding or Reallocating Log Files 26

Manually Switching to Another CDS Copy 27

Expanding the CDS	28
Rotating the CDSs	29
Renaming a CDS	30
Renaming a CDS Using the CDS Disable and Enable Commands	30
Relocating a CDS	31
Relocating an Uncataloged CDS Copy	31
Swapping a CDS	32
Restoring the CDS	33
Restoring the CDS from a Backup Copy	34
3. Managing a TapePlex	41
Managing Library Hardware	42
Managing ACSs	42
Managing SL8500 Redundant Electronics	43
Dual Library Controller Configuration	43
SL8500 Redundant Electronics Environment	45
SL8500 LC Operation	46
Managing CAPs	52
Defining Manual RTDs	53
Managing Library Volumes	54
Using a Volume Report	54
Errant and Selected Volumes	54
Unmatched VOLPARM and External Label Status	55
Volumes not included in VOLPARM	55
Managing Scratch Subpools	56
Managing Cleaning Cartridges:	57
Optimizing Mount Performance	58
Managing Scratch Volumes	59
Adding Scratch Volumes	60
? Populating a New LSM	60
Ejecting Volumes	62
Ejecting Scratch Volumes	62
Managing Cleaning Cartridges	64
Cleaning Cartridge Selection	64

Ejecting Cleaning Cartridges	64
Manually Ejecting Used Cleaning Cartridges	65
Solving Problems	66
Recovering Errant Cartridges	66
Entering Duplicate And Unreadable VOLSERS	67
Entering Duplicate Volumes	67
Entering Cartridges With Missing or Unreadable External Labels	67
Clearing Recovery Status On A CAP	68
Freeing An Allocated CAP	69
Restoring Host-To-Host Communications Services	70
Resolving Possible Lost Mount Requests	71
Resolving Lost Mount Responses (ORH)	71
Overdue Response Handler	71
Operator Response Required For Mount, Dismount, Move, and Swap	71
Using Software Diagnostics	72
4. Using the VTCS Dashboard	73
Checking Virtual Tape Status (Daily)	74
? To check Virtual Tape status:	74
Checking Nearline Tape Status (Daily)	78
? To check Nearline Tape status:	78
Looking at the Big Picture (Weekly)	82
Using the VTV Report	82
Using the MVC Report	85
So, In Closing...	86
5. Working the VTCS Must Do (Sometime) Chores List	89
Doing Demand Space Reclamations, Migrations, and Recalls	90
Doing Demand MVC Space Reclamations	90
Doing Demand VTV Migrations	91
Doing Demand VTV Recalls	91
Working with RTDs	92
Changing RTD Device Types	93
Sharing Transports Between VSM and MVS	94

Working with MVCs	95
? Adding MVCs	95
Defining VTVs	96
Validating and Applying the Volume Definitions	96
Removing MVCs from the Pool	97
? Permanently Removing MVCs	98
? Temporarily Removing MVCs	99
Draining MVCs	100
Changing MVC Attributes with MVCMAINT	101
Working with VTSSs	103
? Removing a VTSS	104
? To remove a VTSS	104
Working with VTVs	105
Deleting Scratch VTVs	105
DELTSCR JCL Example	106
Changing VTV Attributes with VTVMMAINT	107
? Changing VTV Management Class and Unlinking VTVs from MVCs	107
? Logically Dismounting VTVs in an Offline VTSS	108
Managing VTVs Replicated via Cross-TapePlex Replication (CTR)	109
Changing VTV Storage Class with RECONcil	110
? Running a RECONcil Job	111
Using FOR_LOSTMVC to Recover VTVs	114
FOR_LOSTMVC Recovery Procedure	116
6. Leading Edge Solutions with Management and Storage Classes	119
VTCS CDS Levels	120
What are Management and Storage Classes?	121
Creating and Using VTCS Management and Storage Classes: The Basics	122
? To create and use VSM Management and Storage Classes:	122
Maintaining Management and Storage Classes	123
Leading Edge Techniques You Can Do with Management and Storage Classes	124
Grouping Multiple Workloads on Shared MVCs	125
Segregating Individual Workloads on Separate Sets of MVCs	127
Archiving Data	129

Archive Usage Notes	129
Reconciling VTV Media and Location	131
RECONcil Example	131
RECONcil Usage Notes	132
Named MVC Pools or Not?	134
? Creating and Using Named MVC Pools	135
7. Finding and Fixing VTCS Problems	137
Fixing Common Problems	138
Poor VTV Mount Performance	138
Poor Migration Performance	139
Migration Failures	140
Messages Enhancements	140
Display STORCLAs	141
Enhanced MVC Pool Validation	141
Enhanced Storage Class Validation	142
RTD/MVC Failures	143
Okay, It's a Bad MVC...	144
? Recovering an MVC with a Data Check	147
Using the RTV Utility	148
What the RTV Utility Can Recover	148
General Usage Guidelines	149
Security Considerations	149
JCL Examples	150
Listing the VTVs on an MVC	150
Converting a Single VTV by Specifying Its Volser	150
Converting a Single VTV by Specifying Its Volser and Block ID	151
A. LCM Control Statements	153
B. Additional SLUPCOPY Information	155
SLUPCOPY Processing	156
SLUPCOPY Return Codes	157
SLUPCOPY Problem Reporting, Determination, and Resolution	158
Problem Reporting Procedure	158

Common Problem Symptoms and Remedies	158
DFSMSDss SnapShot Problem Symptoms and Remedies	158
Region Problem Symptoms and Remedies	159
Advanced Diagnostic Techniques	160
AB Option	161
Vital Diagnostic Information	162
Required Diagnostic Information	162
Sample Output	163
Example 1 - Successful SnapShot PIT Copy	164
Example 2 - Successful DFSMSDss FlashCopy PIT Copy on a JES3 System	167
Example 3 - Successful DFSMSDss SnapShot PIT Copy	171
Example 4 - Successful FDRSNAP PIT Copy	174
Example 5 - Failed DFSMSDss SnapShot PIT Copy (SVAA not initialized)	176
Last Backup Date and Time and Error Recovery Considerations	177
Example 6 - Failed DFSMSDss SnapShot PIT Copy (Duplicate Target Data Set)	185
Example 7 - Failed FDRSNAP PIT Copy (target volume not offline)	188

Index 191

The Toolkit(s)

[TABLE 1-1](#) and [TABLE 1-2 on page 6](#) describe the tools you need to manage HSC and VTCS, grouped by the interface. For more information about the tools, see *ELS Command, Control Statement, and Utility Reference*.

The HSC Toolkit

TABLE 1-1 The HSC Toolkit

This tool...	...does the following...	...and is used to do these tasks
HSC Operator Commands		
CDS ENABLE/DISABLE	Switches, expands, or moves CDS copies.	“Manually Switching to Another CDS Copy” on page 27
COMMPATH	Changes communications settings.	“Restoring Host-To-Host Communications Services” on page 70
DISPLAY ACS	Displays the status of your ACSs, which includes hardware statuses for the ACSs, LMUs, and stations; and scratch volumes and free cells available.	“Managing ACSs” on page 42
DISPLAY ALL	All of DISPLAY ACS plus LSM and CDS status.	
DISPLAY CAP	Displays CAP information.	“Managing CAPs” on page 52
DISPLAY EXCEPTNS	Displays library hardware problems.	“Managing Library Hardware” on page 42
DISPLAY LSM	Displays LSM status.	“Entering Cartridges” on page 61
DISPLAY SCRATCH	Displays scratch count information based on subpools.	“Managing Scratch Volumes” on page 59
DISPLAY THRESHLD	Displays threshold values set by the Warn command.	“Managing Scratch Volumes” on page 59
DISPLAY VOLUME	Displays physical volume information.	“Errant and Selected Volumes” on page 54
EJECT	Ejects up to 9999 cartridges.	“Ejecting Volumes” on page 25
ENTER	Enters one or more volumes.	“Entering Cartridges” on page 24
MNTD AUTOCLN EJCTAUTO	Determines automatic drive cleaning and automatic ejection of cleaning cartridges that have exceeded their MAXCLEAN value.	“Managing Cleaning Cartridges” on page 64
MODIFY	Changes LSM and CAP state.	? “Managing ACSs” on page 42 ? “Managing CAPs” on page 52
OPTION ENTDUP	Determines the response to entering duplicate volumes.	“Entering Duplicate Volumes” on page 67
RELEASE	Releases a CAP and makes it available for use.	“Freeing An Allocated CAP” on page 69
SMC RESYNCH	Redrive lost mounts.	“Resolving Possible Lost Mount Requests” on page 71
SCRATCH	Scratches specific volumes.	“Managing Scratch Volumes” on page 59

TABLE 1-1 The HSC Toolkit

This tool...	...does the following...	...and is used to do these tasks
UNSCRATCH	Unscratches specific volumes.	“Managing Scratch Volumes” on page 59
WARN	Establishes scratch warning threshold values.	“Managing Scratch Volumes” on page 59
HSC PARMLIB Control Statements		
CDSDEF	Specifies data set names of CDS copies.	? “Expanding the CDS” on page 28 ? “Renaming a CDS” on page 30 ? “Relocating a CDS” on page 31
HSC Utilities (SLUADMIN unless indicated otherwise)		
BACKUP	Backs up the primary CDS.	“Using the BACKUP Utility to Back Up the CDS” on page 24
FMTLOG	Pre-formats log files.	“Managing CDS Logging” on page 25
LOGUTIL	Uses log files to help recover the CDS.	“Restoring the CDS from a Backup Copy” on page 34
OFFLOAD LOGFILE	Offloads transactions from any current log files and activates new log files.	“Managing CDS Logging” on page 25
RESTORE	Restores the CDS from a backup copy.	“Restoring the CDS from a Backup Copy” on page 34
Scratch Conversion (SLUCONDB)	Updates the HSC scratch list from the TMS scratch list.	“Managing Scratch Volumes” on page 59
SCREDIST	Balances the number of scratch volumes between specified LSMs in an ACS. Provides an option to balance by subpool.	“Managing Scratch Volumes” on page 59
SET LOGFILE	Specifies log file data sets.	“Managing CDS Logging” on page 25
SET VOLPARM	Defines all types of volumes and pools.	? “Adding Scratch Volumes” on page 60. ? “Defining Nearline Volumes” on page 60 ? “Adding Volumes to An Existing LSM” on page 60
SLUPCOPY	Backs up the primary CDS (point in time).	“Using the SLUPCOPY Utility to Back Up the CDS” on page 11
UNSELECT	Resets volume selected status.	“Errant and Selected Volumes” on page 54
VOLRPT	Provides physical volume reports.	“Using a Volume Report” on page 54

TABLE 1-1 The HSC Toolkit

This tool...	...does the following...	...and is used to do these tasks
Diagnostics		
Generalized Trace Facility	The Generalized Trace Facility (GTF) provides a low level history of the recent past.	“Using Software Diagnostics” on page 72
Supervisor Call and Abnormal End Dumps (ABEND)	SVC and ABEND dumps are taken where appropriate to diagnose software failures.	
Error Recording Data Set Records	Software failures are logged into these error recording data sets. 4480 Cartridge Subsystem and 3278 Terminal Subsystem Error Recording Data Set (ERDS) records are written by MVS routines.	
HSC LIST Command	The LIST command is used to display an HSC data structure and to provide for diagnostic support for the HSC. Use this command under the direction of StorageTek support personnel.	

TABLE 1-1 The HSC Toolkit

This tool...	...does the following...	...and is used to do these tasks
HSC Performance Tools		
Activities report	Produces a detailed report identifying performance values for various library activities.	“Optimizing Mount Performance” on page 58
Scratch Redistribution utility	Redistributes scratch volumes across the LSMs within a specific ACS.	? “Optimizing Mount Performance” on page 58 ? “Managing Scratch Volumes” on page 59
WARN command	Establishes thresholds which control when HSC notifies the operator of an insufficient quantity of scratch cartridges in an ACS.	“Managing Scratch Volumes” on page 59
CAPPREF command	Specifies preference values for CAPs.	“Managing CAPs” on page 52
SMF records	Logs ACS activity and performance data for analysis.	“Optimizing Mount Performance” on page 58

The VTCS Toolkit

TABLE 1-2 The VTCS Toolkit

This tool...	...does the following...	...and is used to do these tasks
AUDIT	Updates the MVC and VTV information in the HSC CDS.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ? “Changing RTD Device Types” on page 93 ? “Changing MVC Attributes with MVCMAINT” on page 101 ? “Logically Dismounting VTVs in an Offline VTSS” on page 108
DELETSCR	Deletes scratch VTVs from VTSSs and unlinks any migrated VTVs from MVCs	“Deleting Scratch VTVs” on page 105
DISPLAY	Displays the status of All Things VTCS and, as such is one of your Primary tools.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ? “Checking Virtual Tape Status (Daily)” on page 74 ? “Checking Nearline Tape Status (Daily)” on page 78 ? “Doing Demand MVC Space Reclamations” on page 90 ? “Draining MVCs” on page 100 ? “Poor VTV Mount Performance” on page 138 ? “Poor Migration Performance” on page 139 ? “RTD/MVC Failures” on page 143 ? “What the RTV Utility Can Recover” on page 148
MIGRATE	Demand migrates VTVs to MVCs.	“Doing Demand VTV Migrations” on page 91
MVCDRAIN	Recalls all current and scratched VTVs from an MVC and, optionally, “virtually” ejects the MVC (makes it unavailable for VSM use without physically ejecting it from the library).	“Draining MVCs” on page 100
MVCMAINT	Sets MVC attributes.	“Changing MVC Attributes with MVCMAINT” on page 101
MVCPLRPT	Manages your MVCPOOLS and Storage Classes.	<i>ELS Command, Control Statement, and Utility Reference</i>
MVCRPT	Reports the status of your VSM system’s MVCs and is Primary Wellness Meter #2.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ? “Looking at the Big Picture (Weekly)” on page 82 ? “Draining MVCs” on page 100 ? “Restoring the CDS” on page 33 ? “Using the RTV Utility” on page 148
RECALL	Does demand VTV recalls.	“Doing Demand VTV Recalls” on page 91

TABLE 1-2 The VTCS Toolkit

This tool...	...does the following...	...and is used to do these tasks
RECLAIM	Does demand MVC space reclamation.	“Doing Demand MVC Space Reclamations” on page 90
RECONCIL	Reconciles VTV media and location (moves VTVs from one Storage Class to another).	“Changing VTV Storage Class with RECONcil” on page 110
The RTV utility	Converts VTVs contained on MVCs to data sets on Nearline volumes (real tape volumes).	“Using the RTV Utility” on page 148
SET MIGOPT	Changes the following migration parameters: ? Maximum and minimum concurrent automatic migration, immediate migration, and migrate-to-threshold tasks. ? High and low AMTs.	? “Checking Virtual Tape Status (Daily)” on page 74 ? “Doing Demand VTV Migrations” on page 91
VARY RTD	Changes RTD state	? “Checking Nearline Tape Status (Daily)” on page 78 ? “Working with RTDs” on page 92
VARY VTSS	Changes VTSS states on all hosts.	“Working with VTSSs” on page 103

Managing the CDS

Managing the CDS, a key task because of the critical data that the CDS contains. The following sections tell how to safeguard the CDS and how to recover it if you lose one or more copies of the CDS. For information about planning and creating the CDS, see *Configuring HSC and VTCS*.

Backing Up the CDS

If all copies of the CDS fail (that is, you lose the Primary, Secondary, and Standby copies), you must restore the CDS from a backup. You can back up the CDS using non-ELS facilities such as disk mirroring, third party backup software such as IBM DFSMSdss and Innovation FDR, or third party Point-In-Time Copy software such as IBM FlashCopy. StorageTek, however, **does not recommend** these methods. Disk mirroring can impact ELS performance or data integrity. IBM DFSMSdss and Innovation FDR or their functional equivalents do not absolutely guarantee proper serialization and data integrity of the backup. Third party Point-In-Time Copy software does not create true point-in-time copies and does not absolutely guarantee serialization and data integrity.

Instead, StorageTek recommends the following for CDS backup:

- ? SLUPCOPY requires other system facilities, such as DFSMSdss SnapShot to create the backup snapshot. If you have the prerequisites for SLUPCOPY, use SLUPCOPY, which, versus BACKUP, significantly reduces the time required to make a CDS back up copy and better ensures the integrity of the copy.
- ? If you do not have the SLUPCOPY requirements, StorageTek recommends that you use HSC SLUADMIN BACKUP.

Frequency of Backup

StorageTek recommends that you back up the CDS at least daily. If using CDS Logging, you should also run a Log File Offload immediately after you back up the CDS so that during recovery, you can select the log offload file that corresponds to the backup file you use for recovery.

You should also back up the CDS **before** configuration changes and other significant events, including, but not limited to:

- ? Running the SLUADMIN SET utility
- ? Running the VTCS CONFIG utility
- ? Moving a CDS
- ? Expanding a CDS
- ? Merging CDSs.

Using the SLUPCOPY Utility to Back Up the CDS

Requirements

- ? SLUPCOPY can be run only on z/OS systems with an active HSC subsystem.
- ? SLUPCOPY must reside in an APF-authorized library.
- ? Only one SLUPCOPY can be run at a time across all systems that share a given HSC CDS.
- ? The CDS is placed in a reserve state only long enough for the data to be copied to the SLSBKUP data set. No other functions can access the CDS data sets during backup processing:
 - ? If HSC is not active, you must identify the primary, secondary, and standby CDSs to be used for the backup by specifying the SLSCNTL, SLSCNTL2, and SLSSTBY DD statements in the JCL.
 - ? If the HSC is active and you identify the primary, secondary, and standby CDSs to be used for the backup by specifying the SLSCNTL, SLSCNTL2, and SLSSTBY DD statements in the JCL, the DD statements are used even if HSC is active on the host where the utility is being executed. If the HSC is active and these DD statements are omitted, the data sets used by the active HSC on the host where the utility is being executed are used.
- ? If an IEBCOPY COPYMOD operation is attempted on the library containing SLUPCOPY, IEB175I and IEB19CI messages are issued and SLUPCOPY will not be successfully reblocked to the target library of the COPYMOD operation.
- ? SLUPCOPY can be run as a batch job or as a started task; a started task may be preferable as this can avoid delays in waiting for a batch initiator to become available.
- ? All JCL PARM= options (AB, PC, and RR) are considered disabled unless explicitly specified. WTORs are not issued and operator interaction is not required for normal operation.
- ? If the RESERVE on the HSC CDS cannot be obtained within 10 seconds and the RR option is not specified, SLUPCOPY ends without performing a PIT copy. If the RR option is specified, reply Y to the WTOR to retry the RESERVE.
- ? For the COPY function, the OPEN, RESERVE, READs, WRITE, PIT copy, DEQ, and CLOSE of the CDS are performed unless the PC option is specified and the operator reply requested that the copy be aborted, or unless the RESERVE could not be obtained.
- ? For the TEST function, the OPEN, RESERVE, READs, DEQ, and CLOSE operations of the CDS are performed unless the PC option is specified and the operator reply requested that the copy be aborted, or unless the RESERVE could not be obtained. The WRITE and actual PIT copy execution are never performed.
- ? For both the COPY and TEST functions, a LOAD of ADRDSSU, SIBBATCH, or FDRSNAP is performed unless the PC option is specified and the operator reply requested that the copy be aborted, or unless the RESERVE could not be obtained.
- ? The system dump options for SYSMDUMP should include all of the following:

(NUC, SQA, LSQA, SWA, TRT, RGN, LPA, CSA, SUM, GRSQ)

The current SYSMDUMP options can be displayed using the D D,O system command.

- ⌘ Do not put control statements in the SYSIN DD input that create a tape copy; this increases the time the HSC CDS RESERVE is held. If a tape copy is needed, pass the PIT disk copy to a second job step in the SLUPCOPY procedure JCL.
- ⌘ SLUPCOPY supports the following PIT copy methods:
 - ⌘ StorageTek SVAA SnapShot (SIBBATCH)
 - ⌘ DFSMSdss SnapShot / DFSMSdss FlashCopy (ADRDSSU)
 - ⌘ FDR-invoked SnapShot (FDRSNAP)

SLUPCOPY Procedure

Running the SLUPCOPY utility:

1. Allocate the SLSBKUP data set.

It should be slightly larger than the CDSs. The size depends upon the number of discrepancies found. However, a recommended size is five percent larger than the current CDS. The backup data set is formatted as RECFM=F, BLKSIZE=4096. The logical record length can be LRECL=0, which indicates to default to the block size.

If you are using SVAA SnapShot, continue with [Step 2](#). Otherwise, go to [Step 5](#).

2. Verify that the SnapShot and SVAA Libraries are in the System Linklist.

Issue the following z/OS commands:

```
SETPROG LNKLST, TEST, NAME=CURRENT, MODNAME=SIBFVP
SETPROG LNKLST, TEST, NAME=CURRENT, MODNAME=SIBLLAPI
```

If both modules are found, then the SnapShot and SVAA libraries are in the system linklist. If not found, continue with [Step 3](#)

3. Dynamically add the SnapShot and SVAA Libraries to the System Linklist:

1. Set up a PROGxx member in SYSx.PARMLIB that includes the SnapShot and SVAA libraries.
2. Activate the new linklist using a SET PROG=xx command and wait for the IEE536I response.
3. Issue a F LLA,REFRESH command to refresh the linklist and wait for the CSV210I response.
4. Issue a SETPROG LNKLST,UPDATE,ASID=01 command to refresh the Master Scheduler address space and wait for the CSV505I response as shown below:

```
CSV500I LNKLST SET LLSETXX HAS BEEN ACTIVATED
CSV505I ASID 0001 IS NOW USING THE CURRENT LNKLST SET
IEE536I PROG      VALUE XX NOW IN EFFECT
```

```
F LLA, REFRESH
CSV210I LIBRARY LOOKASIDE REFRESHED
```

```
SETPROG LNKLST, UPDATE, ASID=01
CSV505I ASID 0001 IS NOW USING THE CURRENT LNKLST SET
```

4. Initialize SVAA:

1. Start SVAA and wait for the SIB2906I initialization complete message.
2. Issue a C ANTMMAIN command to restart the ANTMMAIN address space. The ANTMMAIN address space only needs to be restarted once after the SnapShot and SVAA libraries have been dynamically added to the system linklist.
3. An ANTM6001I SNAPSHOT WORKING SPACE DATASETS BEING REFRESHED message should be issued during the restart. This may be followed by an ANTM6002W ERROR REFRESHING SNAPSHOT WORKING SPACE DATASETS - RC=nnnn REAS=n message. The ANTM6002W message can be ignored because Concurrent Copy should not be used to perform the PIT copy.

5. Run the SLUPCOPY utility.

For more information, see [“General JCL Requirements \(All PIT Methods\)”](#) on page 14.

General JCL Requirements (All PIT Methods)

```
//PITCOPY PROC
//COPY EXEC PGM=SLUPCOPY,REGION=4M,PARM=
'SSSS,FFFF,MMM,OOOOOOOOOOOOO'
//STEPLIB DD DSN=HSC.LINKLIB,DISP=SHR
//SLSCNTL DD DSN=HSC.PRIMARY.CDS,DISP=SHR
//SLSVDI DD SYSOUT=*
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//SYSMDUMP DD DSN=HSC.SLUPCOPY.SYSMDUMP,DISP=(,DELETE,CATLG),
// UNIT=SYSALLDA,SPACE=(CYL,100,RLSE),VOL=SER=VVVVVV
//SYSIN DD DSN=HSC.LIB.CNTL(PITMMM),DISP=SHR
```

FIGURE 2-1 Example SLUPCOPY JCL (All PIT Methods)

- ? A JCL PARM= parameter is required and must be specified as follows:

```
PARM='SSSS,FFFF,MMM,OOOOOOOOOOOOO'
```

- ? Subsystem name (SSSS) is required and must be specified in positions 1-4. This is the 4-character name that is specified in the IEFSSNxx member of SYSx.PARMLIB to define the HSC as a user of the z/OS Sub-System Interface (SSI)
- ? A “,” (comma) is required in positions 5 and 10.
- ? A function (FFFF) is required and must be specified in positions 6-9:
 - ? “COPY” performs an actual PIT copy
 - ? “TEST” simulates a PIT copy and outputs additional diagnostic messages
- ? A PIT copy method (MMM) is required and must be specified in positions 11-13:
 - ? “SNP” uses SIBBATCH (SnapShot)
 - ? “DSS” uses ADRDSSU (DFSMSdss)
 - ? “FDR” uses FDRSNAP
- ? Options (OOOOOOOOOOOOO) are of course optional, and if specified, a comma is required in position 14.

One, two, or all three options can be specified in positions 15-27 in the form OPT(o₁,o₂,o₃), where o₁,o₂,o₃ are one or more of the following (the order of the options is irrelevant):

- ? “AB” enables an abend on occurrence of an eligible error condition (see [“AB Option” on page 161](#)).
- ? “PC” enables the WTOR for an actual (SLS7090A) or simulated (7091A) PIT copy
- ? “RR” enables the WTOR for RESERVE retry (SLS7092A)

All JCL PARM= options are considered disabled unless explicitly specified. WTORs are not issued and operator interaction is not required for normal operation.

Example: PARM='HSCZ,COPY,SNP,OPT(RR,PC,AB)' specifies that the HSC subsystem name is HSCZ, that an actual PIT copy is to be performed using native SnapShot, and that all options are to be enabled.

- ? A SLSCNTL DD is required and must specify the Primary HSC CDS name. The D CDS command can be used to display the CDS status. Use the data set name associated with the PRIVOL entry in the output of the command as the data set name for the SLSCNTL DD.

- ? The JCL CDS name is compared to the in-memory CDS name of the HSC subsystem.
- ? If the Primary CDS is not specified, SLS7025I (identifying the Primary CDS) and SLS7014E (identifying the error) messages are issued.
- ? The JCL CDS name is also compared to self-describing information within the CDS.
- ? DISP=SHR is required on the SLSCNTL DD otherwise a conflict occurs and the PIT copy will have to be cancelled.
- ? A SLSVDI DD is required.
 - ? A Vital Diagnostic Information report is generated if the AB option is specified and one of the eligible error conditions occur.
 - ? DCB characteristics are LRECL=132, BLKSIZE=27984, RECFM=FB.
- ? Either a SYSPRINT or SYSTERM DD is required.
 - ? DFSMSdss and FDRSNAP require a SYSPRINT DD.
 - ? SIBBATCH requires a SYSPRINT or SYSTERM DD; both can be specified if desired.
- ? A SYSMDUMP DD is strongly recommended.
 - ? This machine-readable dump will speed up problem resolution.
 - ? A primary space allocation of 100 cylinders with the RLSE parameter is recommended.
 - ? Specify DISP=(,DELETE,CATLG) to delete the data set when there is no problem and to keep and catalog the data set when there is a problem.
 - ? If //SYSMDUMP DD DUMMY,... is present in the JCL, this suppresses all dumps, including SYSUDUMP, so comment out the SYSMDUMP DD instead of dummifying it out to allow a SYSUDUMP to be created.
- ? A SYSIN DD is required for command input.

Although SLUPCOPY requires that the JCL include a DD statement for the Primary CDS, a PIT copy of all Primary, Secondary, and Standby CDSs can be created at the same time by specifying multiple commands in the SYSIN DD input (for SnapShot and FDRSNAP), or by specifying multiple data set names on the INCLUDE and RENUNC parameters of the DFSMSdss COPY command.
- ? SIBBATCH must be in the system linklist.

SVAA SnapShot JCL Example

```
//PITSNP  PROC
//COPY    EXEC  PGM=SLUPCOPY,REGION=4M,PARM='SSSS,COPY,SNP,OPT(AB) '
//STEPLIB DD  DSN=HSC.LINKLIB,DISP=SHR
//SLSCNTL DD  DSN=HSC.PRIMARY.CDS,DISP=SHR
//SLSVDI  DD  SYSOUT=*
//SYSPRINT DD  SYSOUT=*
//SYSTEM  DD  SYSOUT=*
//SIBCTRAN DD  DSN=HSC.SACLINK,DISP=SHR
//CTRANS  DD  DSN=HSC.SACLINK,DISP=SHR
//SYSMDUMP DD  DSN=HSC.SLUPCOPY.SYSMDUMP,DISP=(,DELETE,CATLG),
//          UNIT=SYSALLDA,SPACE=(CYL,100,RLSE),VOL=SER=VVVVVV
//OUTSNAP DD  DSN=HSC.PITSNAP.CDS,
//          LIKE=HSC.PRIMARY.CDS,DISP=(,CATLG,DELETE),
//          VOL=SER=TTTTTT,UNIT=SYSALLDA,SPACE=(CYL,NNN)
//SYSIN   DD  DSN=HSC.LIB.CNTL(PITSNPI),DISP=SHR

HSC.LIB.CNTL(PITSNPI) :

  SNAP DATASET (INDDNAME(SLSCNTL) OUTDDNAME(OUTSNAP) -
  HOSTCOPYMODE(SHARED) REPLACE(YES) TOLENQF(Y))
```

FIGURE 2-2 SLUPCOPY SVAA SnapShot JCL Example

The requirements for SLUPCOPY with SVAA SnapShot are:

- ? Ensure that you have completed [Step 2](#), [Step 3](#), [Step 4](#) on [page 13](#).
- ? The HSC CDS must reside on SVA hardware (with the SnapShot feature enabled) to be eligible for a native SnapShot operation.
- ? The source and target data sets must be on the same SVA, otherwise a physical copy is attempted.
- ? Both source and target volumes must be online.
- ? Volume or data set copy is supported, but a data set copy is recommended.
- ? See “Software Pre-Requisites” in Chapter 1 of *SVAA Version 3.1 for OS/390 Installation, Customization, and Maintenance* for the list of software pre-requisites for using SnapShot.
- ? No check is made for a minimum level of SIBBATCH.
- ? Verify that all necessary ECAM devices are online on the SVA subsystems containing the HSC CDSs.
- ? Verify that the SIBSTK00 member in SYSx.PARMLIB specifies the device addresses of all necessary online ECAM devices, otherwise a SIB1814E message will be issued indicating that the specified device is not a supported 3390-3 DASD, and SLUPCOPY will end with an RC=12.
- ? Verify that the SnapShot and SVAA libraries are in the system linklist, and if not, dynamically add them.

- ? Initialize a SVAA subsystem before running SLUPCOPY.
 - ? If the SnapShot and SVAA libraries are not in the system linklist, the following message and an RC=12 is issued:
 - ? SLS7062E SIBBATCH LOAD FAILED. R1=00000806 R15=00000004
 - ? An SVAA subsystem must be initialized before a valid SnapShot PIT copy can be created. If SVAA is not initialized the following messages and an RC=12 is issued:
 - SIB1955S A SVAA VERSION 3.1 SUBSYSTEM HAS NOT BEEN INITIALIZED.
 - SIB4300S THE SVAA SUBSYSTEM HAS NOT BEEN LOCATED.

- ? Either a SYSPRINT or SYSTEM DD is required.
 - ? If only a SYSPRINT DD is supplied, the SIB0764E message for the SYSTEM DD statement can be ignored.
 - ? If only a SYSTEM DD is supplied, the SIB0764E message for SYSPRINT DD statement can be ignored.
 - ? If both SYSPRINT and SYSTEM DD statements are supplied, output is directed to the SYSTEM DD.
 - ? If neither DD is provided, the PIT copy is not performed and SLUPCOPY ends with an RC=12.

- ? A SIBCTRAN or CTRANS DD is required if the SACLINK library is not in the system linklist.

If SAS/C transient libraries are present for other software products, remove the CTRANS DD and specify the SIBCTRAN DD only (See *SVAA Version 3.1 for OS/390 Installation, Customization, and Maintenance*).

- ? If not using the INDDNAME parameter, make sure that data set name on the SLSCNTL DD statement matches the data set name on the SOURCE parameter. Also, if not using the INDDNAME parameter, the HOSTCOPYMODE(SHARED) parameter is required on the SnapShot command, otherwise one of the following will occur (timestamp values will differ):
 - ? If TOLENQF(Y) is specified:

```
SIB4701W  Unable to obtain EXCLUSIVE control on datasetname.
SIB4617I  09:35:00 SnapShot completed, rc=4.
```

- ? If TOLENQF(N) is specified (or defaulted to):

```
SIB4632E  Dynamic allocation failed; rc=4, reason=020C0000,
           smscode=00.
SIB4633I  IKJ56241I DATA SET datasetname NOT ALLOCATED+
SIB4633I  IKJ56241I DATA SET IS ALLOCATED TO ANOTHER JOB OR USER
SIB4627E  Unable to allocate the resource datasetname.
SIB4617I  09:33:53 SnapShot completed, rc=8.
```

Both of the above result in a Point-In-Time copy invalid message (SLS7035E) and an RC=12

- ? If the SnapShot target data set is pre-allocated in an earlier job step, and the OUTDDNAME parameter is used, specify the HSC Primary CDS name on the LIKE= parameter on the OUTDDNAME DD statement to avoid the following:

```
SIB4720W  Target data set datasetname DSCB was updated.
SIB4617I  09:20:19 SnapShot completed, rc=4.
```

The above causes SLUPCOPY to end with a Point-In-Time copy invalid message (SLS7035E) and an RC=12.

- 2 To dynamically allocate a target data set instead of static JCL allocation, remove the OUTDDNAME parameter and associated JCL DD statement, specify the target data set name using the TARGET parameter, and specify the target volume using the VOLUME parameter:

```
//PITSNP2 PROC
//COPY EXEC PGM=SLUPCOPY,REGION=4M,PARM='SSSS,COPY,SNP,OPT(AB) '
//STEPLIB DD DSN=HSC.LINKLIB,DISP=SHR
//SLSCNTL DD DSN=HSC.PRIMARY.CDS,DISP=SHR
//SLSVDI DD SYSOUT=*
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//SYSTEM DD SYSOUT=*
//SIBCTRAN DD DSN=HSC.SACLINK,DISP=SHR
//CTRANS DD DSN=HSC.SACLINK,DISP=SHR
//SYSMDUMP DD DSN=HSC.SLUPCOPY.SYSMDUMP,DISP=(,DELETE,CATLG),
// UNIT=SYSALLDA,SPACE=(CYL,100,RLSE),VOL=SER=VVVVVV
//SYSIN DD DSN=HSC.LIB.CNTL(PITSNPI2),DISP=SHR

HSC.LIB.CNTL(PITSNPI2) :

 SNAP DATASET (INDDNAME(SLSCNTL) TARGET('HSC.PITSNAP.CDS') -
 VOLUME(TTTTTT) HOSTCOPYMODE(SHARED) REPLACE(YES) TOLENQF(Y))
(YES) TOLENQF(Y))
```

This approach also conveniently avoids allocation of the target data set when using the TEST function to simulate a PIT copy.

If the VOLUME parameter does not specify a volume on the same SVA hardware as the CDS, the following will occur:

```
SIB4762E SnapShot is not supported between different SVAs.
SIB4617I 11:45:42 SnapShot completed, rc=8.
```

This results in a Point-In-Time copy invalid message (SLS7035E) and an RC=12.

DFSMSdss SnapShot JCL Example

```
//PITDSS  PROC
//COPY    EXEC  PGM=SLUPCOPY,REGION=4M,PARM='SSSS,COPY,DSS,OPT(AB) '
//STEPLIB DD  DSN=HSC.LINKLIB,DISP=SHR
//SLSCNTL DD  DSN=HSC.PRIMARY.CDS,DISP=SHR
//SLSVDI  DD  SYSOUT=*
//SYSPRINT DD  SYSOUT=*
//SYSMDUMP DD  DSN=HSC.SLUPCOPY.SYSMDUMP,DISP=(,DELETE,CATLG),
//          UNIT=SYSALLDA,SPACE=(CYL,100,RLSE),VOL=SER=VVVVVV
//SYSIN   DD  DSN=HSC.LIB.CNTL(PITDSSI),DISP=SHR

HSC.LIB.CNTL(PITDSSI) :

COPY                                     -
DATASET (INCLUDE (HSC.PRIMARY.CDS) )    -
      RENUNC ( (HSC.PRIMARY.CDS,
               HSC.PITDSS.CDS) )        -
FASTREPLICATION (REQUIRED)              -
CANCELERROR                              -
SHARE                                     -
TOL (ENQF)                                -
TGTTALOC (CYL)                            -
OUTDYNAM (TTTTTT)                        -
CATALOG
```

FIGURE 2-3 SLUPCOPY DFSMSdss SnapShot JCL Example

The requirements for SLUPCOPY with DFSMSdss SnapShot are:

- ? ADRDSSU must be in the system linklist.
- ? The HSC CDS must reside on SVA hardware (with the SnapShot feature enabled) to be eligible for a DFSMSdss SnapShot operation.
- ? The source and target data sets must be on the same SVA, otherwise a physical copy is attempted.
- ? Both source and target volumes must be online.
- ? Volume or data set copy is supported, but a data set copy is recommended.
- ? DFSMSdss must be at DFSMS 1.3 or later (this corresponds roughly to OS/390 V1R3).
- ? As in the case of Native SnapShot, verify that all necessary ECAM devices are online, verify that the SIBSTK00 member is correct, verify/dynamically add the SnapShot and SVAA libraries to the system linklist, and initialize a SVAA subsystem.
- ? Make sure that the CDS name on the SLSCNTL DD matches the data set names on the INCLUDE parameter and the first RENUNC sub-parameter on the DFSMSdss COPY command.
- ? The SHARE parameter is required.

This avoids an ADR411W message and an RC=4 from the COPY, which then causes a Point-In-Time copy invalid message (SLS7035E) and an RC=12.

- ⌚ The FASTREPLICATION(REQUIRED) parameter is strongly recommended.
- ⌚ FASTREPLICATION(PREFERRED) is the default for a COPY command; override the default to avoid performing a physical copy.
- ⌚ The FASTREPLICATION(REQUIRED) and CONCURRENT parameters are mutually exclusive.
- ⌚ The CONCURRENT parameter is strongly discouraged since it may result in a physical copy. Remember, this is supposed to be a Point-In-Time copy!
- ⌚ The TOLERATE(ENQFAILURE) parameter is optional.
If specified, it makes no difference as long as the SHARE parameter is also specified.

DFSMSdss FlashCopy JCL Example

```
//PITDSS  PROC
//COPY    EXEC  PGM=SLUPCOPY,REGION=4M,PARM='SSSS,COPY,DSS,OPT(AB) '
//STEPLIB DD  DSN=HSC.LINKLIB,DISP=SHR
//SLSCNTL DD  DSN=HSC.PRIMARY.CDS,DISP=SHR
//SLSVDI  DD  SYSOUT=*
//SYSPRINT DD  SYSOUT=*
//SYSMDUMP DD  DSN=HSC.SLUPCOPY.SYSMDUMP,DISP=(,DELETE,CATLG),
//          UNIT=SYSALLDA,SPACE=(CYL,100,RLSE),VOL=SER=VVVVVV
//SYSIN   DD  DSN=HSC.LIB.CNTL(PITDSSI),DISP=SHR

HSC.LIB.CNTL(PITDSSI) :

COPY                                     -
DATASET (INCLUDE (HSC.PRIMARY.CDS) )    -
          RENUMC ( (HSC.PRIMARY.CDS,
                   HSC.PITFLASH.CDS) )  -
FASTREPLICATION (REQUIRED)              -
CANCELERROR                              -
SHARE                                     -
TOL (ENQF)                               -
TGTALLOC (CYL)                           -
OUTDYNAM (TTTTTT)                        -
CATALOG
```

FIGURE 2-4 SLUPCOPY DFSMSdss FlashCopy JCL Example

The requirements for SLUPCOPY with DFSMSdss FlashCopy are:

- ? ADRDSSU must be in the system linklist.
- ? The HSC CDS must reside on IBM hardware (with the FlashCopy feature enabled) to be eligible for a DFSMSdss FlashCopy operation.
- ? The source and target data sets must be on the same IBM disk subsystem, otherwise a physical copy is attempted.
- ? Both source and target volumes must be online.
- ? Volume or data set copy is supported, but a data set copy is recommended.
- ? DFSMSdss must be at DFSMS 1.3 or later (this corresponds roughly to OS/390 V1R3).
- ? See *Implementing ESS Copy Services Redbook* for the complete list of FlashCopy prerequisites.
 - ? FlashCopy Version 1 microcode only supports volume FlashCopy.
 - ? FlashCopy Version 2 microcode is required for data set FlashCopy.
- ? Make sure that the CDS name on the SLSCNTL DD matches the data set names on the INCLUDE parameter and the first RENUMC sub-parameter on the DFSMSdss COPY command.
- ? The SHARE parameter is required.

This avoids an ADR411W message and an RC=4 from the COPY, which then causes a Point-In-Time copy invalid message (SLS7035E) and an RC=12.

- ? The FASTREPLICATION(REQUIRED) parameter is strongly recommended.
 - ? FASTREPLICATION(PREFERRED) is the default for a COPY command; override the default to avoid performing a physical copy.
 - ? The FASTREPLICATION(REQUIRED) and CONCURRENT parameters are mutually exclusive.
 - ? The CONCURRENT parameter is strongly discouraged since it may result in a physical copy. Remember: this is supposed to be a Point-In-Time copy!
- ? The TOLERATE(ENQFAILURE) parameter is optional.

If specified, it makes no difference as long as the SHARE parameter is also specified.
- ? Keep it simple!
 - ? Use a background copy (the default) so that the FlashCopy relationship terminates automatically when the copy is complete.
 - ? Don't specify the FCNOCOPY or FCWITHDRAW parameters on the DFSMSdss COPY command.
 - ? Don't use an Incremental FlashCopy relationship since this is only supported at the volume level.
 - ? Don't use Persistent FlashCopy.
 - ? Don't use multiple FlashCopy relationships.
 - ? Don't use a FlashCopy Consistency Group.

FDRSNAP JCL Example

```
//PITFDR  PROC
//COPY    EXEC  PGM=SLUPCOPY,REGION=4M,PARM='SSSS,COPY,FDR,OPT(AB) '
//STEPLIB DD  DSN=HSC.LINKLIB,DISP=SHR
//SLSCNTL DD  DSN=HSC.PRIMARY.CDS,DISP=SHR
//SLSVDI  DD  SYSOUT=*
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//SYSMDUMP DD DSN=HSC.SLUPCOPY.SYSMDUMP,DISP=(,DELETE,CATLG),
//          UNIT=SYSALLDA,SPACE=(CYL,100,RLSE),VOL=SER=VVVVVV
//TAPE1   DD  DUMMY
//SYSIN   DD  DSN=HSC.LIB.CNTL(PITFDRI),DISP=SHR

HSC.LIB.CNTL(PITFDRI) :

      SNAP TYPE=FDR,DSNENQ=NONE,ENQ=OFF
      MOUNT VOL=TTTTTT,SNAPUNIT=DDDD
```

FIGURE 2-5 SLUPCOPY FDRSnap JCL Example

The requirements for SLUPCOPY with FDRSnap are:

- ? FDRSNAP must be in the system linklist.
- ? The HSC CDS must reside on SVA hardware (with the SnapShot feature enabled) to be eligible for a FDRSNAP operation.
- ? Volume copy only is supported.
- ? No check is made for a minimum level of FDRSNAP.
- ? A dummied TAPE1 DD is required.
- ? The DSNENQ=NONE parameter is required.
 - ? This prevents FDRSNAP from issuing a SYSDSN ENQ on the HSC CDS.
 - ? If DSNENQ=NONE is not specified, the PIT copy is not performed and SLUPCOPY ends with an RC=12. A FDR158 message and a User 801 abend also occur, but these are issued by FDRSNAP, not SLUPCOPY.
- ? The ENQ=OFF parameter is strongly recommended.

This prevents FDRSNAP from issuing a SYSVTOC ENQ and RESERVE on the HSC CDS volume.
- ? The VOL parameter must specify the online device of the HSC CDS that is the SnapShot source.
- ? The SNAPUNIT parameter must specify the **offline** device that is the SnapShot target.
 - ? If the target device is not offline, FDRSNAP issues a User 502 abend and message FDR230 with Reason 8.
 - ? If the source and target devices are not in the same subsystem, FDRSNAP issues a User 502 abend and message FDR230 with Reason A.
 - ? The volume label of the target volume is not modified by FDRSNAP in this case.
- ? FDRSNAP is not normally used by itself; a second step is usually added to the procedure JCL to create an online backup of the offline PIT copy using FDR, FDRDSF, or FDRCOPY. Refer to Section 26 in the *Fast Dump Restore (FDR) User Manual* for more information

Using the BACKup Utility to Back Up the CDS

Running the BACKup utility:

1. Allocate the SLSBKUP data set.

It should be slightly larger than the CDSs. The size depends upon the number of discrepancies found. However, a recommended size is five percent larger than the current CDS.

The backup data set is formatted as RECFM=F, BLKSIZE=4096. The logical record length may be LRECL=0. In this case, LRECL=0 indicates to default to the block size.

2. Run the BACKup utility.

The CDS is placed in a reserve state only long enough for the data to be copied to the SLSBKUP data set. No other functions can access the CDS data sets during backup processing:

- ⌘ If HSC is not active, you must identify the primary, secondary, and standby CDSs to be used for the backup by specifying the SLSCNTL, SLSCNTL2, and SLSSTBY DD statements in the JCL.
- ⌘ If the HSC is active and you identify the primary, secondary, and standby CDSs to be used for the backup by specifying the SLSCNTL, SLSCNTL2, and SLSSTBY DD statements in the JCL, the DD statements are used even if HSC is active on the host where the utility is being executed. If the HSC is active and these DD statements are omitted, the data sets used by the active HSC on the host where the utility is being executed are used.

Example JCL for backing up the up Primary, Secondary, and Standby CDSs:

```
//JOB BKUP      job (account),programmer
//S1           EXEC PGM=SLUADMIN,PARM=MIXED
//STEPLIB      DD DSN=hlq.SEALINK,DISP=SHR
//SLSBKUP      DD DSN=backup.dataset.name(+1),DISP=(NEW,CATLG,DELETE),
//              UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=
//SLSCNTL      DD DSN=primary.dataset.name,DISP=SHR
//SLSCNTL2     DD DSN=secondary.dataset.name,DISP=SHR
//SLSSTBY      DD DSN=standby.dataset.name,DISP=SHR
//SLSPRINT     DD SYSOUT=A
//SLSIN        DD *
              BACKUP
```

Managing CDS Logging

The HSC Transaction Logging Service is an internal HSC service that records information into one or, optionally, two Log Files. If all copies of the CDS fail (that is, you lose the Primary, Secondary, and Standby copies), recovery from a backup can be time consuming. When recovering from a backup, CDS logging can aid in resynchronizing the CDS with the data content of the VSM subsystem. If you are initially setting up logging in your configuration, see *Configuring HSC and VTCS*. The following sections tell how to manage CDS Logging.

Note – Note that recovery using log files involves an analysis of the log data and construction of the required MVC audit statements to restore access to the latest versions of data. This does **not** recover the CDS to its exact state before the failure! For example, a VTV can exist on multiple MVCs. The audit recovers access to all copies of that VTV, but the copies may not be on exactly the same MVCs as before a CDS loss. The objective of CDS logging is to recover access to data, which is **not** a bit by bit CDS recovery!

Periodically Offloading Log Files

You need to periodically offload log files to keep them from filling up, which stops logging. Here are some Best Practices for doing so:

- ? Set up a PROC to periodically offload the log files. Experimenting for a while to see how long it takes for the log file to fill under normal or peak operations, and then run log offload at that interval.
- ? Also consider setting up your auto-ops package to intercept the SLS1781W message, which is displayed starting at 70% full for the Log File data sets.
- ? You should also schedule a log file offload to be run when you run your periodic CDS backup so that during recovery, you can select the log offload file that corresponds to the backup file you use for recovery.
- ? If the CDS is lost (all three copies are gone) or unreliable for any reason, do not attempt to offload the log file, instead see [“Restoring the CDS” on page 33](#).

Expanding or Reallocating Log Files

If you need to expand your log files, or re-allocate them for any reason, do the following:

1. Create and format new log files.

The size of the allocated log files depends on the number of transactions your system generates, as well as the frequency of performing the offload. StorageTek suggests you allocate and activate some test log files and determine the rate at which they fill before determining the size of the production log files.

Sample JCL:

```
//FMTLOG JOB (account),REGION=1024K
//S1 EXEC PGM=SLUADMIN,PARM=MIXED
//STEPLIB DD DSN=hlq.SEALINK,DISP=SHR
//SLSLOG1 DD DSN=hlq.CDSLOG1,DISP=(,CATLG,DELETE),
// UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(CYL,100)
//SLSLOG2 DD DSN=hlq.CDSLOG2,DISP=(,CATLG,DELETE),
// UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(CYL,100)
//SLSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//SLSIN DD *
FMTLOG
```

2. Run SET LOGFILE to “stage” the new log files.

Sample JCL:

```
//SETLOG JOB (account),REGION=1024K
//S1 EXEC PGM=SLUADMIN,PARM=MIXED
//STEPLIB DD DSN=hlq.SEALINK,DISP=SHR
//SLSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//SLSIN DD *
SET LOGFILE(hlq.CDSLOG1,hlq.CDSLOG2)
```

3. Run OFFLOAD LOGFILE to offload the old log files.

```
//JOBOFFL job (account),programmer
//S1 EXEC PGM=SLUADMIN,PARM=MIXED
//STEPLIB DD DSN=hlq.SEALINK,DISP=SHR
//SLSOFFLD DD DSN=offload.dataset.name(+1),DISP=(NEW,CATLG,DELETE),
// UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=
//SLSCNTL DD DSN=primary.dataset.name,DISP=SHR
//SLSCNTL2 DD DSN=secondary.dataset.name,DISP=SHR
//SLSSTBY DD DSN=standby.dataset.name,DISP=SHR
//SLSPRINT DD SYSOUT=A
//SLSIN DD *
OFFLOAD LOGFILE
```

This automatically causes HSC to switch to the new log files.

Manually Switching to Another CDS Copy

As described in [“Backing Up the CDS” on page 10](#), if you specify multiple CDS copies, HSC automatically switches to another CDS copy if the Primary CDS fails. So why would you want to manually switch to another CDS copy? Basically, you would do so in either of the following situations:

- ? You want to move the CDS and/or expand it.
- ? After an HSC automatically switches CDS copies, you want to delete the old Primary, reallocate it, and repopulate it. Once you enable the reallocated Primary CDS, HSC will recopy the valid CDS data to it from a backup copy.

You use the CDS ENABLE/DISABLE commands to switch, expand, or move CDS copies. For more information, see *ELS Command, Control Statement, and Utility Reference*.

Expanding the CDS

You can use the CDS EXpand command to add VOLPARM data, VTCS CONFIG data, or vaulted volume data to the CDS. To make other configuration changes that may require increasing the size of the CDS (such as adding new ACSs and LSMs when the LIBGEN did not use the FUTRACS and FUTRLSM parameters) you must use other methods instead of CDS EXpand. See “Reconfiguring a TapePlex” in *Configuring HSC and VTCS* for more information.

Caution – StorageTek recommends backing up all CDS copies prior to issuing the CDS EXpand command. Failures during the expand operation usually cause the CDS to become unusable. It is important to back up the CDS before invoking the CDS EXpand command to make sure that the latest copy of the CDS is available in case of a failure during the expand operation.

The following are guidelines for CDS EXpand:

- ? HSC must be active and tape activity can be ongoing when using CDS EXpand.
- ? Do not issue CDS Enable and/or Disable commands simultaneously from multiple hosts. Doing so can cause the HSC to issue error messages. If this occurs, refer to *ELS Messages and Codes* to determine if user action is required.
- ? Update your CDSDEF control statement in the HSC PARMLIB as necessary to make it consistent with the results of any expand operation.
- ? Restoring the CDS to a larger pre-allocated data set can’t be used to dynamically expand a CDS; the additional space is not formatted and can’t be used as is
- ? StorageTek recommends that all CDSs be allocated with the same amount of DASD space. The usable space in the CDS is determined by the number of 4096 byte blocks that fit in the CDS with the smallest DASD space allocation.

To expand all CDSs:

- 1. Disable each CDS (one at a time) with the CDS DISABLE command.**
- 2. Reallocate each CDS with a larger primary space quantity.**
Do not specify a secondary space quantity; all CDSs must have only a single extent.
- 3. Re-enable each CDS with the CDS ENABLE command.**
- 4. Enter the CDS EXpand command.**

All CDSs that are known to the HSC (that is, are enabled) are expanded at the same time with a single invocation of the CDS EXpand command.

Rotating the CDSs

CDS names do not change as the result of a CDS automatic or manual switch. You can use a sequence of CDS Disable and Enable commands to restore the order and match the data set names to their expected roles.

To rotate the CDSs:

- 1. Enter a Display CDS command to view the current status and assignment of the CDSs:**

```
SYS000001 = ELS.SYSCNTL2
PRIVOL = PROD02 FLAGS(40) ACTIVE
SYS000002 = ELS.SYSCNTL
SECVOL = PROD01 FLAGS(40) ACTIVE
```

The display shows that SYSCNTL (the original Primary) is now the Secondary and SYSCNTL2 (the original Secondary) is now the Primary.

- 2. Disable the current Primary:**

```
CDS DISABLE PRIMARY
```

ELS.SLSCNTL2 is disabled, and ELS.SLSCNTLT becomes the new Primary.

- 3. Re-enable ELS.SLSCNTL2 as the new active Secondary:**

```
CDS ENABLE DSN(ELS.SLSCNTL2)
```

- 4. Enter Display CDS command to confirm that the CDSs are rotated:**

```
SYS000001 = ELS.SYSCNTL
PRIVOL = PROD02 FLAGS(40) ACTIVE
SYS000002 = ELS.SYSCNTL2
SECVOL = PROD01 FLAGS(40) ACTIVE
```

Renaming a CDS

There are two methods for renaming a CDS:

- ? Use the CDS Disable and Enable commands to do the rename without stopping HSC.
- ? Stop HSC and use the BACKUp and RESTore utilities to do the rename.

The obvious disadvantage to using the BACKUp and RESTore utilities is that HSC must be stopped; however, the advantage is that a backup of the CDS is created.

Renaming a CDS Using the CDS Disable and Enable Commands

To rename a CDS using commands:

1. **Disable the CDS you want to rename on all hosts.**

For example:

```
CDS DISABLE DSN(ACS.DBASEOLD)
```

2. **Rename the data set that contains the CDS.**

For example, rename ACS.DBASEOLD to ACS.DBASECPY.

3. **Enable the CDS by its new name.**

For example:

```
CDS ENABLE DSN(ACS.DBASECPY)
```

If the Enable command fails for the renamed CDS, CDS definitions are restored to what they were before the command was issued. Modify the CDSDEF control statement in the HSC PARMLIB to keep it consistent with the active CDS.

The CDS names are recorded in the Database Heartbeat (DHB) record. During HSC initialization, the data set names in the DHB are compared with the data set names specified on the CDSDEF control statement in the HSC PARMLIB.

If a data set name specified on the CDSDEF statement does not match any of the CDS names recorded in the DHB, that CDS is disabled. If all the specified CDSs are disabled, the HSC will not initialize. The specific assignment of enabled CDSs to the primary, secondary, and standby CDS(s) is made based on the CDS assignments recorded in the Database Heartbeat record.

If the CDS(s) needs to be renamed, use the HSC BACKUp and RESTore utilities as described in the rename procedure below. Do **not** use MVS, TSO ISPF, or third-party utilities to rename the CDS(s) without running the BACKUp and RESTore utilities.

Relocating a CDS

To relocate a CDS:

1. **Disable the CDS you want to relocate on all hosts.**

For example:

```
CDS DISABLE DSN(ACS.DBASECPY)
```

2. **Allocate a new data set with the appropriate CDS attributes.**

For more information, see *Configuring HSC and VTCS*.

3. **Enable the CDS the data set allocated in [Step 2](#):**

For example:

```
CDS ENABLE DSN(ACS.DBASENEW) NEWLOC
```

Note – MVS uses catalog services to resolve the volume and unit definitions, if not specified.

If a rename or relocate operation fails, CDS definitions are restored to what they were before the command was issued. Modify the CDSDEF control statement to keep it consistent with the active CDS.

Relocating an Uncataloged CDS Copy

Assume that ACS.DBASECPY has been disabled and deleted (or uncataloged), and ACS.NOTCATLG has been allocated and cataloged. The following command relocates an uncataloged CDS copy:

```
CDS ENABLE DSN(ACS.NOTCATLG) NEWVOL(HSC001),NEWUNIT(ABC)
```

Modify the CDSDEF control statement to make it consistent with the CDS definitions in this command. If a rename or relocate operation fails, CDS definitions are restored to what they were before the command was issued.

Swapping a CDS

In contrast with relocating a CDS using HSC commands or utilities, there are a number of third-party software products that allow disk data sets to be swapped from one location to another without affecting the users of those data sets. The HSC has been enhanced to dynamically update the unit address information stored in the CDS within a few seconds after a TDMF, FDRPAS, or P/DAS swap operation takes place so that HSC and VTCS utilities always use the new CDS location.

This enhancement does not provide an unrestricted ability to move a CDS. Moving a CDS by a means other than a PPRC or swap operation requires a change to the VOLSER of the CDS. The traditional process of a SLUADMIN BACKup and RESTore of the CDS must be used to reset both unit address and volume serial information if the VOLSER of the CDS changes.

Restoring the CDS

If all copies of the CDS fail (that is, you lose the Primary, Secondary, and Standby copies), you must restore the CDS from a backup. If you lose a single copy of the CDS (and you have multiple copies), you can use the CDS ENABLE/DISABLE commands to continue running on the valid copy and recreate the copy that has the error. For more information, see [“Manually Switching to Another CDS Copy”](#) on page 27.

Caution – If you think you have lost all copies of the CDS, contact StorageTek Software Support as described in [“Customer Support”](#) on page 440 to ensure that restoring the CDS from a backup is actually required and to assist, if necessary, with the restore process.

Note –

- ? The RESTORE process is identical whether you have used SLUPCOPY or SLUADMIN BACKUP to create the CDS backup.
 - ? Before doing a restore, you should either do a new backup of the corrupt CDS, or rename all the current CDS copies to preserve them for later analysis.
-

Restoring the CDS from a Backup Copy

To restore the CDS from a backup copy:

1. If HSC is still active on any host, stop the active HSC systems.

If logging is enabled, continue with [Step 2](#) to resynchronize VSM data. Otherwise, go to [Step 3](#).

2. If the CDS can be accessed, run the normal log file offload job.

This offload is to capture the VSM activity since your last offload.

```
//JOBFFL job (account),programmer
//S1      EXEC PGM=SLUADMIN,PARM='execution parameters'
//STEPLIB DD DSN=hlq.SEALINK,DISP=SHR
//SLSOFFLD DD DSN=offload.dataset.name(+1),DISP=(NEW,CATLG,DELETE),
//        UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=
//SLSCNTL DD DSN=primary.dataset.name,DISP=SHR
//SLSCNTL2 DD DSN=secondary.dataset.name,DISP=SHR
//SLSSTBY DD DSN=standby.dataset.name,DISP=SHR
//SLSPRINT DD SYSOUT=A
//SLSIN   DD *
OFFLOAD LOGFILE
```

If the CDS cannot be accessed, offload the log file using the LOGDSN parameter. The normal CDS logging process uses log information stored in the CDS. If the CDS is inaccessible, then you need to use the logging information that is in the current log file, which you specify with the LOGDSN parameter.

```
//JOBFFL job (account),programmer
//S1      EXEC PGM=SLUADMIN,PARM='execution parameters'
//STEPLIB DD DSN=hlq.SEALINK,DISP=SHR
//SLSOFFLD DD DSN=offload.dataset.name(+1),DISP=(NEW,CATLG,DELETE),
//        UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=
//SLSPRINT DD SYSOUT=A
//SLSIN   DD *
OFFLOAD LOGFILE LOGDSN(hsc.log1)
```

Note – If the CDS cannot be accessed, **note that** if you attempt to run the OFFLOAD LOGFILE utility after restoring the CDS but without using the LOGDSN option, the offload may not succeed, or may create an erroneous log offload file.

3. Restore the CDS from the last good backup.

```
//JOBREST job (account),programmer
//S1      EXEC PGM=SLUADMIN,PARM='execution parameters'
//STEPLIB DD DSN=hlq.SEALINK,DISP=SHR
//SLSBKUP DD DSN=backup.dataset.name(0),DISP=SHR
//SLSCNTL DD DSN=primary.dataset.name,DISP=SHR
//SLSCNTL2 DD DSN=secondary.dataset.name,DISP=SHR
//SLSSTBY DD DSN=standby.dataset.name,DISP=SHR
//SLSPRINT DD SYSOUT=A
//SLSIN   DD *
RESTORE
```

Caution – It is critical that your RESTORE JCL specifies all HSC data sets in use (Primary, Secondary, Standby).

For more information, see *ELS Command, Control Statement, and Utility Reference*.

Note – Special precautions should be taken for running BACKup and RESTore when local/remote-linked libraries run CDSs independent of each other. These precautions should be followed when the link connecting the local and remote libraries is disrupted. See *ELS Legacy Interfaces Reference* for more information.

If you are using log files for recovery, continue with [Step 4](#). Otherwise, go to [Step 9](#).

4. Ensure that the restored CDS is referencing the correct log file information:

- ? Run SET LOGFILE(OFF).

```
//SETLOG JOB (account),REGION=1024K
//S1 EXEC PGM=SLUADMIN,PARM='execution parameters'
//STEPLIB DD DSN=hlq.SEALINK,DISP=SHR
//SLSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//SLSIN DD *
SET LOGFILE(OFF)
```

- ? Run the FMTLG utility to reformat the log files.

```
//FMTLOG JOB (account),REGION=1024K
//S1 EXEC PGM=SLUADMIN,PARM='execution parameters'
//STEPLIB DD DSN=hlq.SEALINK,DISP=SHR
//SLSLOG1 DD DSN=hlq.CDSLOG1,DISP=(,CATLG,DELETE),
// UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(CYL,100)
//SLSLOG2 DD DSN=hlq.CDSLOG2,DISP=(,CATLG,DELETE),
// UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(CYL,100)
//SLSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//SLSIN DD *
FMTLOG
```

- ? Run SET LOGFILE again, specifying the names of the newly initialized log files.

```
//SETLOG JOB (account),REGION=1024K
//S1 EXEC PGM=SLUADMIN,PARM='execution parameters'
//STEPLIB DD DSN=hlq.SEALINK,DISP=SHR
//SLSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//SLSIN DD *
SET LOGFILE(hlq.CDSLOG1,hlq.CDSLOG2)
```

5. Run the LOGUTIL command to generate a data set with the AUDIT MVC commands required for recovery and run the commands in that data set.

In the following example, assume that last known good CDS backup was taken on 5/12/2009 at 10 p.m:

- ? The LOGIN statement specifies a DD statement for each offload log file, beginning with the log file created with the last known good backup and ending with the log file that you created in [Step 2](#).
- ? LOGUTIL GENAUDIT specifies REVCMD as the DD name of the data set that contains the commands for recovery of the VSM data .

```
//JOBLOGR job (account),programmer,REGION=1024k
//S1 EXEC PGM=SLUADMIN,PARM='execution parameters'
//STEPLIB DD DSN=hlq.SEALINK,DISP=SHR
//LOGIN DD DSN=offload.dataset.name (-2),DISP=OLD
// DD DSN=offload.dataset.name (-1),DISP=OLD
// DD DSN=offload.dataset.name (0),DISP=OLD
//REVCMD DD DSN=offload.dataset.genaudit,DISP=(,CATLG,DELETE),
// UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=
//SLSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//SLSIN DD *
LOGUTIL FROMDATE(2009-5-12) FROMTIME(22:00:00) LOGDD(LOGIN)
GENAUDIT COMMANDS(REVCMD)
```

6. If LOGPOL=REQUIRED is currently specified in the VTCS configuration:

Specify LOGPOL=OPTIONAL in the CONFIG GLOBAL statement and run CONFIG to temporarily disable logging in the VTCS configuration. This is required to successfully execute the MVCMAINT commands while HSC/VTCS is not active.

7. Set the MVCs to be audited to read-only status:

Execute the MVCMAINT READONLY (ON) commands for the MVCs to be audited with HSC/VTCS inactive. This will ensure that the MVCs are not used when HSC/VTCS is active.

```
//JOBAUDIT job (account),programmer,REGION=1024K
//S1 EXEC PGM=SLUADMIN,PARM='execution parameters'
//STEPLIB DD DSN=hlq.SEALINK,DISP=SHR
//SLSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//SLSIN DD *
MVCMAINT READONLY(ON) MVC( +
mvc1 +
mvc2 +
... +
mvcn +
)
```

8. If LOGPOL=REQUIRED is required in the VTCS configuration:

Specify LOGPOL=REQUIRED in the CONFIG GLOBAL statement and run CONFIG if LOGPOL=OPTIONAL was temporarily specified at [Step 6](#)(above).

9. Restart HSC on one hosts, but do not start tape activity.

10. To recover the non-VSM portion of the CDS, run SLUADMIN AUDIT on all ACSs.

```
//JOBAUDIT job (account),programmer,REGION=1024k
//S1 EXEC PGM=SLUADMIN,PARM='execution parameters'
//STEPLIB DD DSN=hlq.SEALINK,DISP=SHR
//SLSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//SLSIN DD *
AUDIT ALL
```

Note – Once the library audit is started, you can simultaneously run [Step 11](#), [Step 12](#), and [Step 13](#).

11. Audit all VTSSs.

```
//JOBAUDITV job (account),programmer,REGION=1024k
//S1 EXEC PGM=SLUADMIN,PARM='execution parameters'
//STEPLIB DD DSN=hlq.SEALINK,DISP=SHR
//SLSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//SLSIN DD *
AUDIT VTSS (VTSS0,VTSS1)
```

12. Run scratch synchronization.

Run `SLUCONDB` to synchronize HSC scratch status with the TMS(s). For more information, see *ELS Command, Control Statement, and Utility Reference*. If you are using LCM, see *LCM User's Guide* for the equivalent LCM utilities.

13. If you are using logging, audit affected MVCs using the recovery commands from the data set created in [Step 5](#).

```
//JOB RMVC job (account), programmer, REGION=1024k
//S1 EXEC PGM=SLUADMIN, PARM='execution parameters'
//STEPLIB DD DSN=hlq.SEALINK, DISP=SHR
//SLSIN DD DSN=offload.dataset.genaudit, DISP=SHR
//SLSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
```

If you are not using logging, contact StorageTek Software Support for assistance in determining which MVCs need to be audited.

14. Start HSC on all hosts.

15. Restart tape activity.

Managing a TapePlex

In general, managing a TapePlex is similar to managing VTCS, which is to (1) periodically and continuously, keep tabs on the health of your TapePlex(es) and (2) do as-needed chores as the need for them occurs. In this chapter, however, we'll intermix period and as-needed tasks as we talk about the physical elements of a TapePlex and what you need to do to keep them operating normally. SMC/HSC/VTCS is server software, so it's designed to be self-correcting. Similarly, there's redundancy and resilience built into the library hardware itself. So as long as you frequently check the status of the software and hardware and fix any problems, that'll take care of the bulk of your TapePlex management tasks.

Managing Library Hardware

One of your best status tools is the innocuously named `DISPLAY EXCEPTNS` command, where “exceptions” are less-than optimal hardware conditions. The command output you want to see is a series of messages that say “No *<name of hardware component>* problems were detected“. If you’re experiencing system problems, this kind of output tells you that the hardware is fine, but there might be software problems.

If, on the other hand, you get output such as “CAP Not Operational“, “Robot Hand needs Maintenance“, and “LSM is Offline“, you need more information to determine if the problem is with the software or hardware. Therefore, if you get any of these messages, look them up in *ELS Messages and Codes*, where you’ll find detailed explanations and user responses. In some cases, the response is pretty obvious and straightforward. If a robot hand needs maintenance, you put in a call to the CSE. Sometimes the response is not so clear, however. If an LSM is offline, the obvious move is to modify it back online...unless the LSM is down for maintenance, or you’re changing drive unit addresses, in which case you wait until the work is done before bringing the LSM back online.

So you’ve used `DISPLAY EXCEPTNS` as your first diagnostic tool, and either found no problems or found problems and resolved them and you’re using the Activities and ACS daily Reports to tune up the library performance. What’s next in terms of managing the library hardware? In the following sections, we get more granular with status commands and responses to the conditions they show.

Managing ACSs

Two other commands you should know and use are `DISPLAY ACS` and `DISPLAY ALL`. `DISPLAY ACS` shows you the status of your ACSs, which includes hardware statuses for the ACSs, LMUs, and stations; and scratch volumes and free cells available. `DISPLAY ALL` tells you all that plus LSM and CDS status. You may see components that are not in an online or operational state...ACSs disconnected, stations offline or in standby mode, LSMs offline, and so forth. You use the `MODIFY` command to change the state of LSMs and CAPs, and the `VARY` command to change ACS state. But per the above discussion, know why you’re changing hardware states and how to do it before you enter the appropriate command. If you need to modify an LSM offline for maintenance, make sure you’ve quiesced tape activity to that LSM before you do so...and, correspondingly, make sure the maintenance is complete before you vary online the LSM.

Managing SL8500 Redundant Electronics

A Redundant Electronics option is available to minimize control path downtime caused by a Library Controller (LC) failure by automating a Library Controller switch. In this configuration a second Library Controller is cabled to the local area network, connecting it to the LSM(s). HSC directs all work to one Library Controller, called the active LC, while the second LC, called the standby, remains powered on as a ready backup. Designation of active and standby LC is dynamic and their roles change according to environmental conditions.

For information about the commands and utilities discussed in this section, see *ELS Command, Control Statement, and Utility Reference*.

Dual Library Controller Configuration

For this implementation, a dual LC configuration is one pair of LCs installed and network connected to one library in a string. **This is the only valid configuration.** [FIGURE 3-1 on page 44](#) shows an example of this configuration.

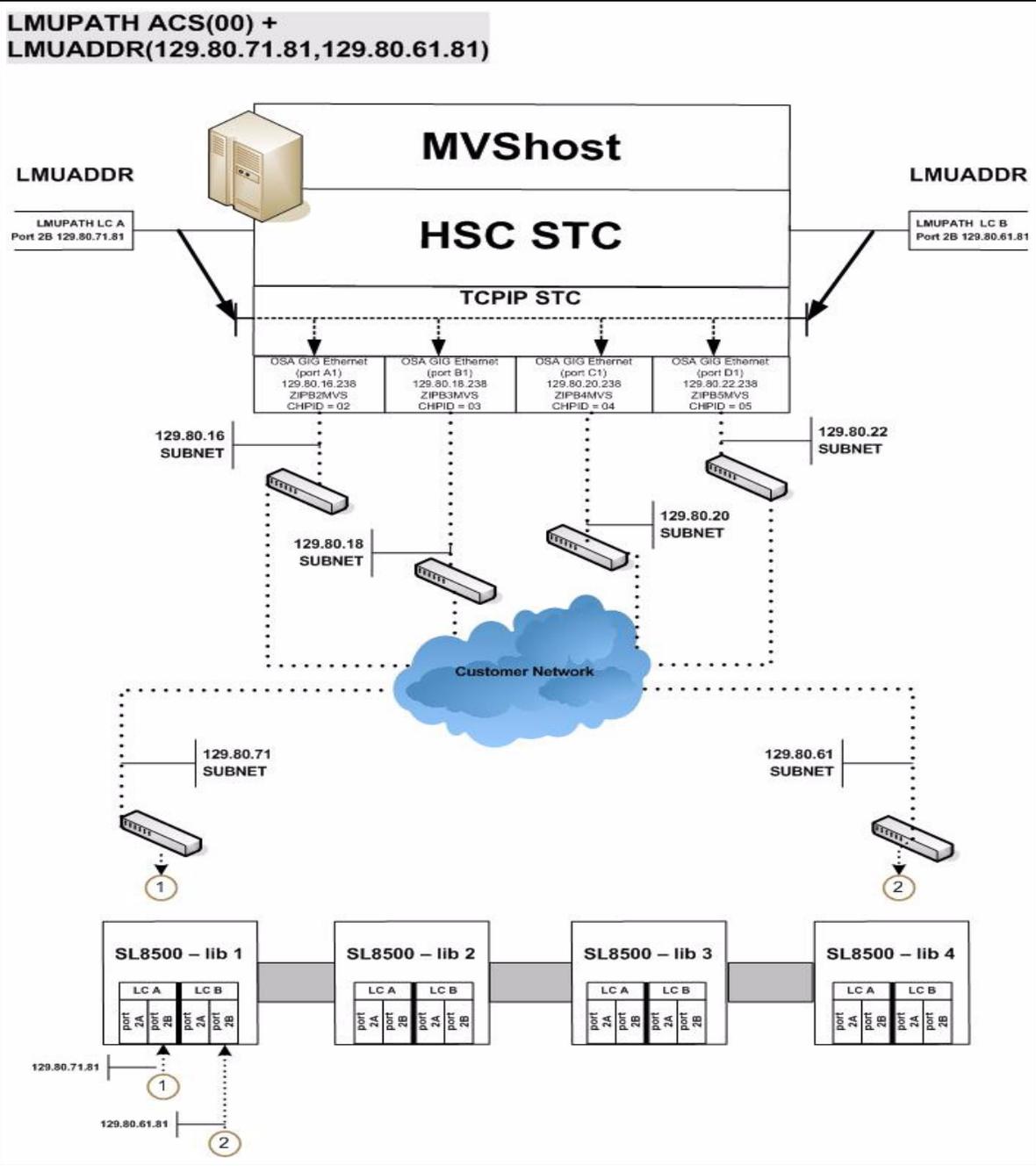


FIGURE 3-1 Dual LC Configuration

The following rules apply to a dual LC configuration. Both LCs

- ? Should be connected to all hosts,
- ? Can be powered on at all times, and
- ? Must be connected to both LAN 0 and LAN 1.

In the event of a failure from the active LC, an automated switch will occur and the standby assumes the active LC role. The HSC is informed and notifies the operator of the switch. Most outstanding requests are re-driven and all future library requests are sent to the newly activated LC. Once the failed LC is repaired and powered on, it assumes the standby role.

An operator `SWitch` command is provided for those occasions when it becomes desirable to dynamically activate a standby LC. The operator issues the `Switch` command, and the standby LC assumes the active LC role after instructing the former active LC to initiate a reboot. If the former active LC reboots successfully, it assumes the standby LC role.

Note – Warnings and precautions apply to operating in a dual LC environment. See [“Redundant LC Operational Overview” on page 47](#) and become familiar with these requirements.

Network connections must be specified for both the active and standby LCs when the HSC is installed.

SL8500 Redundant Electronics Environment

Library requests cannot be automated if all network connections paths are offline to the LC, or if all network connection paths are inoperative. In a Redundant Electronics environment, if all network connection paths to the active LC are inoperative, use the HSC `SWitch` command to move the workload to the standby LC.

SL8500 LC Operation

The Library Controller (LC) responds to mount and dismount requests from the host through the HSC and passes each request to the appropriate LSM, to perform the physical action requested.

The following procedures are described in this section:

- ? [“Displaying ACS Status” on page 46](#)
- ? [“Operating an LC - Redundant LC Configuration” on page 47](#)

Note –

- ? When you reboot an LC, error messages appearing before the message:

```
... ACS AA LSM LL ready; ...
```

can be ignored. Do not ignore error messages that are displayed after the message.

- ? Refer to the appropriate StorageTek hardware operator's guide for a description of the library control panel and information on how to power on/off and boot a Library Controller in both stand-alone LC and redundant LC configurations.
-

Displaying ACS Status

To determine the status of the LC, issue the following command:

```
Display Acs acsid
```

The command response lists the following:

- ? Current status of the ACS
- ? Current status of the Redundant LC (if configured) including:
 - ? HSC/LC compatibility levels
 - ? Active LCs
 - ? Standby LCs
 - ? Online, offline or standby status of each LC

Operating an LC - Redundant LC Configuration

Redundant LC Operational Overview

Redundant Electronics configurations provide a backup LC which can take over if the active LC fails. (Refer to “[Dual Library Controller Configuration](#)” on page 43 for a description of the dual LC option.) Both LCs are capable of being the active but only one can be the active at any given moment. Each LC regularly checks the status of the other LC over the LAN. HSC directs all I/O to the active LC.

When an LC is powered on in a dual LC configuration, it places itself in a standby status and checks for an active LC. If an active LC exists, the second LC remains ready as the standby. If an active LC does not exist, the first LC to be fully initialized assumes the active role.

If both LCs power on successfully, the following HSC message is displayed:

```
... ACS AA: RE LIBID C1 is configured; Active is y, Standby is ready
```

where *y* is the configured LC identifier; "A" or "B."

LC Switch Overview

The active LC functionality can be switched in the following ways:

- ? An automatic switch from a self-detected failure or power supply problem in the active LC.
- ? An operator initiated switch (using the `SWITCH` command) after all online stations become incapable of communication.
- ? An operator initiated switch (using the `SWITCH` command) while online stations remain capable of communication with the active LC.
- ? When the reboot switch on the active LC is pressed.
- ? When the active LC is powered off.

Consequences of an LC Switch

When a LC switch occurs, a series of console messages track the changing status of the active and standby LCs. Critical status changes appear as highlighted messages which remain on the screen until the condition is corrected or the message is superseded.

The following message is displayed when status changes and the standby LC is ready:

```
... ACS AA: RE LIBID C1 is configured; Active is y, Standby is ready
```

The following message is displayed if there is a status change and a LC error occurs:

```
... ACS AA: : RE LIBID C1 Is Not configured; Active Is y, Standby is not ready
```

The following message is displayed if there is a status change and the standby LC is not ready:

```
... ACS AA: : RE LIBID C1 Is configured; Active Is y, Standby is not ready
```

In the messages above, *y* is the configured LC identifier, "A" or "B".

When a LC switch occurs, the HSC interrogates each LC to determine the current status. The status of each station is maintained as online, offline, standby, pending online, pending offline, or pending force offline. Use the `Display Acs acsid` command to determine the status of each station and LC.

Note – Auto-mode CAPs are locked during a LC switch until the LSM completes initialization.

Automatic LC Switch

LC microcode detects, reports, and reacts to LC failures as necessary to keep the ACS operational. **Note that** this happens automatically so some work may be in process within the LC. When the standby LC assumes the active role, it notifies HSC of its changed status and sends the LC Ready signal. HSC reads the recovery information provided by the new active LC concerning in transit cartridges within the various LSMs in the ACS. HSC then:

- ? Modifies, or marks "completed," the queued requests, reflecting the current locations of in-transit cartridges.
- ? Sends all incomplete requests to the active LC.
- ? Marks cartridges as errant when requests cannot be completed successfully.

Note – Enter and eject operations may have to be restarted after a LC switch.

Operator Initiated LC Switch

Before initiating a LC switch if some network connections are communicating, determine if the need to switch LCs is immediate, or if processing can be completed prior to initiating the switch. If the need to switch LCs is not critical, wait until the LSMs are relatively idle.

Initiate an LC switch for a Library ID by issuing the following command:

`SWitch Acs acsid LIB libid`

The command is routed through the standby LC to the disconnected LC, causing it to reboot. The following sequence of events occurs:

1. HSC issues the message

`... ACS AA: Switch initiated, expect notification in 20 seconds`

2. The standby LC assumes the active LC role ("ACTIVE" indicator illuminates).
3. Online LSMs perform quick-init.
4. As each LSM becomes ready, the HSC issues the message:

`... ACS AA LSM LL Ready; Temp Outage Queue Will Be ReDriven`

5. If the former active LC completes reboot successfully, it assumes the standby LC role.

If the `SWitch` command is issued while processing is active, cartridges may be in-transit in various LSMs. Recovery procedures occur automatically as described in [“Automatic LC Switch” on page 48](#). Upon receiving the LC Ready signal, HSC waits for the LSMs to complete a quick-init and then re-drives the requests through processing the Temp Outage Queue.

CAP Manual Recovery

When the LC Switch occurs and certain CAP functions are processing requests (enter/eject), manual intervention for recovery is required after the switch has completed. Below are various CAP scenarios with an appropriate procedure to resolve for each.

A switch occurs when an Enter function is active

When a switch occurs and an enter function is active, after the switch completes, two possible events can occur simultaneously or individually:

- ? A cartridge is selected by HSC/ELS, but not moved to an LSM home cell when the switch occurred. After the switch completes, the cartridge is selected and cannot be moved to an LSM cell.
- ? The cartridges in the CAP to be moved to the LSM receives message SLS0699I - 03/01 error from the library during a move. The library reserves the CAP because there are carts in the CAP after the switch completes. The library retains ownership of the CAP until the cartridges are removed. This is normal behavior of the SL8500 library.

Procedure to resolve:

- ? Use the procedure in the SL8500 Operator's Guide to manually remove the cartridges from the CAP with the SLC.
- ? Issue a `Display Cap aa:ll:cc` command for the specific cap affected.
- ? If the CAP is offline, issue the `Modify CAP aa:ll:cc,online` command.
- ? Issue the `ENTER aa:ll:cc` command to restart the enter function for the CAP
- ? If CAP is automatic, issue:

```
CAPP x aa:ll:cc MANual
```

```
CAPP x aa:ll:cc AUTO
```

to reset it to auto mode.

- ? Insert the balance of the cartridges removed from the previous Enter into the CAP.
- ? If an SLS0251E message that states that volser is a duplicate, run the Unselect utility to unselect the volser. Afterwards, the volser may be entered into the LSM.

When entering the volser, a message SLS0694D is displayed to ask you what you want to do with the duplicate, you should respond logically delete.

A switch occurs when an Eject function is active

When a switch occurs and an eject function is active, after the switch completes, the cartridges in the LSM to be moved to the CAP receive an SLS0699I message - 03/01 error from the library for the move operation. The library reserves the CAP because there are carts in the CAP after the switch completes. The library retains ownership of the CAP until the cartridges are removed. This is normal behavior of the SL8500 library.

Procedure to resolve:

- ? Use the procedure in the SL8500 Operator's Guide to manually remove the cartridges from the CAP with the SLC.
- ? Issue a `Display Cap aa:ll:cc` command for the specific cap affected
- ? If the CAP is offline, issue the `Modify CAP,online` command
- ? Re-issue the `EJECT vol-list` or `vol-range aa:ll:cc` command or restart the eject utility to eject the balance of the cartridges.
- ? If the CAP was automatic prior to the eject function, issue the `CAPP x aa:ll:cc manual` and then re-issue it as `CAPP x aa:ll:cc auto` to reset it to automode.

A switch occurs when CAPs are set to automatic mode

When a switch occurs and CAPs are set to automatic mode, when the switch completes, message SLS0699I may be presented with a return/reason code of 07/05 error from the library during a reserve of the CAP. This is because the CAPs have not initialized completely after the switch has completed. This is normal behavior of the SL8500 library.

Procedure to resolve:

- ? Wait until the message SLS0668I for the last LSM in the library switched is issued.
- ? Issue a `CAPPref prefvalue aa:ll:cc MANual` for each automatic CAP.
- ? Issue a `CAPPref prefvalue aa:ll:cc AUTO` for each CAP to become automatic.

Managing CAPs

`DISPLAY CAP` shows you CAP settings and status; `MODIFY CAP` changes the CAP state.

`DISPLAY CAP`, in addition to basic status, provides some other valuable information that helps you decide *whether* you want to change CAP state, and if so, when:

- ? CAPid
- ? CAP size: PCAP (priority CAP); 21-cell or 14-cell 9740 (standard CAP); 40-cell (enhanced CAP); 20-cell (9360 CAP); 30-cell (9360 optional CAP); or 39-cell (SL8500 CAP)
- ? Host ID of the host owning the CAP
- ? Priority: CAP preference value
- ? CAP mode: cleaning, draining, ejecting, entering, or idle
- ? CAP status: active, automatic mode, manual mode, offline, online, and/or recovery needed

The `CAPPREF` command lets you set the CAP mode (manual or automatic) and preference for selection (0-9, where 9 is the highest preference). CAPs in manual mode require an `ENTER` command to unlock them; CAPs in automatic mode do not. In general, you specify CAP modes and preferences in a `CAPPREF` command at configuration in the HSC PARMLIB Member and run with these settings. If you do need to change a CAP's setting, you can do it dynamically by entering a `CAPPREF` command. For example, If your systems is experiencing high levels of enters and ejects, you may want to bump up the CAP preferences for enhanced CAPs. The *caveat* on CAP preferencing is that Priority CAPs (PCAPs) always have a priority of 0 (never selected unless specifically requested) so that they remain generally available.

Defining Manual RTDs

In a DR situation, you may have no automated tape resources available. To support nonlibrary VSM configurations, you must define manual RTDs in a nonexistent ACS.

To define manual RTDs:

- 1. Generate LIBGEN macros to define a nonexistent ACS.**

The SLIDRIVS macro defines the device address for the manual RTDs.

Note – The LSM in the nonexistent ACS can be defined as an SL8500 or SL3000 to take advantage of the `MODIFY CONFIG` command.

- 2. Run the SLICREAT utility to format a new CDS.**

- 3. Run SET SLIDRIVS utility to set the MODEL for the manual RTDs, for example:**

```
SET SLIDRIVS(400,401,402,403) MODEL(T9840C)
```

Note – Manual RTDs on the same panel must be the same drive type.

- 4. Run the VTCS CONFIG utility to define the VSM system.**

- 5. Use the VTCS IMPORT utility to import MVCs into the new CDS to use with the manual RTDs.**

These MVCs are treated as nonlibrary volumes.

Managing Library Volumes

Managing library volumes has a wide range of tasks, ranging from using a Volume Report, where we'll start, through managing cleaning cartridges.

Using a Volume Report

The VOLRPT utility provides volume information that can help you manage the physical volumes in your library. The VOLRPT utility function uses the Unified User Interface, and therefore provides output formats of either text, XML or Comma Separated Values (CSV). See *ELS Command, Control Statement, and Utility Reference* and *ELS Programming Reference* for more information about how to request the XML and CSV formats and explanations of the outputs, as well as for command syntax details.

You may want to run the VOLRPT on a periodic basis to display and resolve volume exception conditions or just display volume status, such as described in the following sections:

- ? [“Errant and Selected Volumes” on page 54](#)
- ? [“Unmatched VOLPARM and External Label Status” on page 55](#)
- ? [“Volumes not included in VOLPARM” on page 55](#)
- ? [“Managing Scratch Subpools” on page 56](#)
- ? [“Managing Cleaning Cartridges:” on page 57](#)

There are many other uses for VOLRPT. See *ELS Command, Control Statement, and Utility Reference* for other ways to select volumes and sort the VOLRPT output.

Errant and Selected Volumes

Sample VOLRPT control card:

```
VOLRPT SORT(LOC) INCLUDE(SEL,ERR)
```

This request produces a report of all errant and selected cartridges in location sequence.

The “selected” status is normally transient and represents a cartridge being scratched or moved from one location to another. For each “selected” volume on the report, you should issue a DISPLAY VOLUME console command to determine if the volume has become unselected. If the volume remains selected, it may represent an abnormal termination of a host while the volume was selected. If you are certain that the volume is not currently in use, you can run the UNSELECT utility to reset the selected status.

An errant volume is one that is not in its last known location. Attempting to eject or mount an errant volume will cause HSC to look for the volume in its home cell, its last known source location and its last known destination location. If the volume is not in any of these locations, you may need to run an audit of the ACS to locate the volume.

Unmatched VOLPARM and External Label Status

Sample VOLRPT control card:

```
VOLRPT INCLUDE (NONMEDEQ)
```

This request produces a report of all volumes for which the media label on the cartridge does not match the VOLPARM media type.

The character preceding the Media indicates the type of mismatch detected. The character '*' means that the label did not match the VOLPARM media code. The character '-' means that there was no VOLPARM matching the volume. Note that these volumes also have a scratch subpool of '*NON-VOLPARM*'. The '@' character means that the volume had no physical media label.

Sample output of this command is shown in [FIGURE 3-2](#).

SLUADMIN (7.1.0)		StorageTek Enterprise Library Software Utility										PAGE 00003	
TIME 11:41:12		Volume Report Utility										DATE 2010-06-29	
Volume	Media	Rectech	Cell Loc	Err	Scr	Ext Cln	Subpool	Inserted	Time	Last Used	Time	Times	MWL&
Serial	Media	Rectech	AA:LL:Pa:Ro:Co	Err	Scr	Ext Cln	ID	Date	Time	Date	Time	Selected	
VOL111	*STK1R	STK1R	03:00:00:31:00	Y	R	GENERAL	20050607	16:21:59	20100321	16:35:21	139	50	
VOL222	*STK1R	STK1R	03:00:00:20:00	Y	R	GENERAL	20100113	10:56:15	20100321	16:35:21	54	49	
VOL333	-STK1R	STK1R	03:00:02:06:01	Y	R	*NON-VOLPARM*	20050607	16:22:04	20100321	16:35:21	138	15	
VOL444	-STK1R	STK1R	03:00:03:05:02	Y	R	*NON-VOLPARM*	20050607	16:22:14	20100321	16:35:21	138	28	
VOL555	@STK1R	STK1R	03:00:00:04:02	Y		*NON-VOLPARM*	20050607	16:21:45	20100321	16:35:21	138	47	

0SLS0155I Condition code for utility function is 0

FIGURE 3-2 Volume Report (Unmatched VOLPARM and External Label)

Volumes not included in VOLPARM

If your subpool totals only VOLRPT shows volumes in the *NON-VOLPARM* pool, you will want to get a detailed list of these volumes. There is no special control card to select these volumes, but the INCLUDE (NONMEDEQ) can be used. You will also see any volumes where the VOLPARM media does not match the media on the volume label.

Managing Scratch Subpools

You can obtain a report showing subpool totals by subpool, library location, and media type without listing individual volumes by running the command:

```
VOLRPT SUMM(SUBPOOL) NOVOL
```

Sample output of this command is shown in [FIGURE 3-3](#).

SLUADMIN (7.1.0) TIME 15:47:29		StorageTek Enterprise Library Software Utility Subpool Totals, all Ranges					PAGE 00001 DATE 2010-09-29	
Subpool ID		Label Type		Range Limits		DRTEST?		
GENERAL		SL		N/A - N/A		No		
		Non						
ACS	LSM	SCRATCH	SCRATCH	Media		Rectech		
00	00:00	0	0					
	00:01	0	0					
ACS total		0	0					
01	01:00	98	1	STK1R		STK1R		
	01:01	0	0					
ACS total		98	1					
Library total		98	1					
SLUADMIN (7.1.0) TIME 15:47:29		StorageTek Enterprise Library Software Utility Subpool Totals, all Ranges					PAGE 00002 DATE 2010-09-29	
Subpool ID		Label Type		Range Limits		DRTEST?		
NON-VOLPARM		SL		N/A - N/A		No		
		Non						
ACS	LSM	SCRATCH	SCRATCH	Media		Rectech		
00	00:00	21	1	STK1R		STK1R		
	00:01	5	23	STK2P		STK2P		
ACS total		26	24					
01	01:00	10	3	STK1R		STK1R		
	01:01	17	8	STK2P		STK2P		
ACS total		27	11					
Library total		53	35					

FIGURE 3-3 Volume Report (Scratch Subpools)

Managing Cleaning Cartridges:

You can produce a report containing only cleaning cartridges, sorted by use count, using the following:

```
VOLRPT VOL(CLN%%%) SORT(USE) DESCEND
```

Sample output is shown in [FIGURE 3-4](#).

SLUADMIN (7.1.0)		StorageTek Automated Cartridge System Utility										PAGE 00002	
TIME 16:23:09		Volume Report Utility										DATE 2010-09-29	
Volume Serial	Media	Rectech	Cell Loc AA:LL:Pa:Ro:Co	Err	Ext Cln Scr Sel Lbl Use	Subpool	ID	--- Inserted -- Date	Time	-- Last Used -- Date	Time	Times MWL% Selected	
CLN007	STANDARD	LONGITUD	00:00:03:07:04		R			20100418	16:29:11	20100425	20:11:19	26 50	
CLN081	STANDARD	LONGITUD	00:01:03:13:01		R			20100418	18:22:40	20100825	12:13:17	17 47	
CLN082	STANDARD	LONGITUD	01:00:03:03:01		R			20100419	14:31:01	20100603	11:24:27	5 75	
CLN041	STK1U	STK1RABC	00:01:01:37:01		R			20100418	16:41:48	20100427	13:56:48	3 86	
CLN003	STK2W	STK2P	00:00:00:00:15		R			20100418	16:29:11	20100501	14:19:20	2 83	
CLN040	STK2W	STK2P	00:01:03:03:00		R			20100418	18:31:18	20100911	00:53:51	2 63	
CLN028	STK2W	STK2P	00:00:01:09:01		R			20100418	16:41:51	20100717	15:52:46	2 15	

FIGURE 3-4 Volume Report (Cleaning Cartridges)

The clean use count is actually the field labeled “Times Selected” at the far right. The field labeled “Cln Use” in the middle of the report indicates Y when a cleaner is overuse.

Optimizing Mount Performance

“Optimal mount performance” is measured by how quickly you can get real tape volumes mounted and dismounted. Here, your best tool is the Activities Report, which pulls data from SMF records and provides information that helps you balance mount/dismount activity across ACSs and LSMs. This report shows Total Mount and Dismount activity broken out as follows:

- ? Scratch mount/total mounts and average time per mount.
- ? Nonscratch mounts/total mounts, and average time per mount.
- ? Scratch mounts in a different LSM/total mounts, average time per mount, and average number of pass-thrus.
- ? Nonscratch mounts in a different LSM/total mounts, average time per mount, and average number of pass-thrus.

If the Activities Report uncovers performance problems due to scratch mounts, you can use the HSC Scratch Redistribution utility or LCM to redistribute scratch volumes across the LSMs within a particular ACS. If you're running low on scratch volumes, you can run scratch synchronization to scratch volumes with non-current data or enter more scratch volumes into the ACS. If you're seeing excessive passthru activity or long mount times for nonscratch volumes, you can use LCM to redistribute nonscratch volumes.

Managing Scratch Volumes

Managing scratch volumes basically means having enough scratch volumes...but not too many...and having them in the right place (preferably in an LSM with sufficient drives types compatible with the volume media). [TABLE 3-1](#) describes the scratch volume management tasks and associated tools.

TABLE 3-1 Scratch Volume Management Tasks and Tools

Task	Tool	Notes
Maintain Sufficient Quantities of Scratch Cartridges	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ? Warn command - establishes scratch warning threshold values. ? Display THReshld command - displays scratch count and scratch threshold information by subpool name, ACS id, LSM id, media, and recording technique. 	<p>In general:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ? Use the Warn command to set scratch warning thresholds and the Display THReshld command to monitor scratch volume levels versus the threshold. ? If you're running low on scratch volumes, run scratch synchronization, redistribute scratch volumes, and then add more scratch volumes, in that order. For more information, see "Adding Scratch Volumes" on page 60.
Synchronizing CDS Scratch Status with TMS Status	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ? HSC SLUONDB scratch conversion utility (with SMC Tape Management Extract Utility (SMCUDBX) for client/server configurations. <p style="text-align: center;">OR</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ? LCM OPTIONS SYNC parameter process. 	As described above, scratch synchronization can free scratch volumes. Typically, you do scratch synchronization after your daily TMS run.
Redistributing Scratch Volumes	Use the HSC Scratch Redistribution utility or LCM to redistribute scratch volumes across the LSMs within a particular ACS.	As described in "Optimizing Mount Performance" on page 58 , poor scratch distribution can inhibit optimum library performance. Scratch redistribution balances the number of scratch volumes between specified LSMs in an ACS, and can be done by subpool.
Scratching Specific Volumes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ? The HSC SCRAtch command scratches one or more volumes. ? The HSC UNSCRAtch command unscratches one or more volumes. 	Yes, if you have the command authorization, you can actually scratch and unscratch specific volumes. In general, however, don't explicitly scratch specific volumes unless you really know what you're doing. Let the TMS manage volume scratch status and do scratch synchronization instead.
Displaying Scratch Subpool Information	Display SCRAtch	This only displays scratch subpool information for the host the command is executed on; to display all scratch subpool information use the VOLRPT utility.

Adding Scratch Volumes

Adding scratch volumes to the library is a general task that breaks down into two separate cases:

- ? [“Populating a New LSM” on page 60](#)
- ? [“Adding Volumes to An Existing LSM” on page 60](#)

In both cases, you first need to create POOLPARM/VOLPARM definitions for the new volumes as described in [“Defining Nearline Volumes” on page 60](#).

Defining Nearline Volumes

To define Nearline volumes:

1. Create a POOLPARM statement to define the volume scratch pool.

For example, to define a scratch pool for use by hosts MVS1 and MVS2:

```
POOLPARM NAME (SYS19840P22) TYPE (SCRATCH) HOSTID (MVS1 , MVS2) LABEL (SL
```

2. Create a VOLPARM statement to define the volumes.

For example, to define a range of 9840C volumes:

```
VOLPARM VOLSER (C2000 - C2999) MEDIA (STK1R) RECTECH (STK1RC)
```

3. Enter a SET VOLPARM command to apply the volume definitions.

```
SET VOLPARM APPLY (YES)
```

? Populating a New LSM

After you have done your POOLPARM/VOLPARM definitions, to populate a new LSM, use one of the following methods:

- ? Set one or more CAPs to automatic mode and repeatedly open and fill the CAP with new cartridges.
- ? **If** the LSM is a non-Streamline library and is large enough for you to enter:
 1. Open the LSM access door.
 2. Manually place cartridges into the storage cells in the LSM.
 3. Close and lock the access door.
 4. Run an HSC Audit on the LSM.

A full LSM audit can take considerable time, but so can entering cartridges through the CAP, so you have to judge which method is faster.

Adding Volumes to An Existing LSM

After you have done your POOLPARM/VOLPARM definitions, enter the cartridges as described in [“Entering Cartridges” on page 61](#).

Entering Cartridges

Cartridges are just cartridges until they get entered into the ACS; then they become volumes in the CDS. You can enter scratch cartridges, non-scratch cartridges, cartridges to be used as MVCs, or cleaning cartridges.

To enter cartridges:

1. Verify that the LSM where you want to enter the cartridges is online.

For example, to see the status of LSM 00:00:

```
DISPLAY LSM 00:00
```

If you get an SLS0054I message that says “LSM 00:00 now online”, you’re all set. Otherwise, you have to figure out what the problem is and, at a minimum, enter a `MODIFY LSM aa:cc ONLINE` command to get it back online.

2. Check the CAP mode:

For example, to see the status of the PCAP on LSM 00:00:

```
DISPLAY CAP 00:00:02
```

If the CAP mode is Automatic, go to [Step 4](#). Otherwise, continue with [Step 3](#).

3. If the CAP mode is Manual...

...you have two choice, depending on your site’s practices:

? **Change the CAP mode to Automatic.**

For example, for the PCAP in [Step 2](#), to set the CAP preference to zero (always required for PCAPs) and mode to Automatic:

```
CAPPREF 0 00:00:02 AUTO
```

? **Use ENTER to make the CAP ready for cartridge entry (mode stays Manual).**

For example, for the PCAP in [Step 2](#), to make the CAP ready for entry and set scratch status on for the entered cartridges:

```
ENTER 00:00:02 SCRATCH
```

Note – If all CAPs are currently in use for ejects, you can use the `SENTER` command to schedule a CAP for cartridge entry.

4. Enter the cartridges...

...per the *Operator’s Guide* for your LSM type.

Ejecting Volumes

As described in the following sections, there are basically three reasons why you want to eject volumes:

- ? You defined too many scratch volumes, and temporarily need some room for specific volumes; see [“Ejecting Scratch Volumes” on page 62](#).
- ? You have specific volumes that are no longer in use, and you want to vault them. For more information, see *ELS Disaster Recovery and Offsite Data Management Guide*.
- ? You have specific 9x40 volumes that are nearing end of Media Warranty Life. [FIGURE 3-2 on page 55](#) shows a volume report with the %MWL column on the extreme right. This column shows the percentage of Media Warranty Life used for the volume, where %100 means the volume has exceeded its Media Warranty Life.

Note – For 9x40 volumes, the Media Information Record (MIR) stores the number of times the cartridge has been mounted during its lifetime. During dismount processing, HSC uses the mount count value read from the MIR to compute the %MWL. For HSC to report MWL% for a library-resident volume, the volume must have been mounted and dismounted at least once after it was entered into the library. When a volume is ejected, the associated CDS VAR record is deleted, and HSC can no longer report MWL% for that volume while it remains outside the library. However, the mount count is maintained in the MIR, and the next time the volume is entered into the library and mounted and dismounted at least once, HSC can again report MWL% for that volume while it resides in the library.

If a transport cannot read or write the MIR, the drive can reinitialize a new MIR elsewhere on the volume. Errors processing a MIR are rare, and although the drive will reconstruct a new MIR if it must, it is possible the drive might not be able to transfer the mount count from the failed MIR to the replacement MIR, in which case the drive will initialize the mount count to zero in the replacement MIR. If you observe a non-zero mount count go to zero for a volume (for example, by monitoring the MWL% on a volume report), you should examine the SYSLOG for data checks on this volume and have the tape drive examined, and you should also consider retiring this volume.

The Media Warranty Life feature requires the following:

- ? Tape library LMU compatibility level 21
- ? T9x40 transports with 1.42 drive firmware

Note – T9840B is not supported because of memory constraints.

- ? T10000A and T10000B with 1.38 drive firmware
- ? PTF SES700 L1H154V
- ? You have cleaning cartridges that have exceeded their useful life and must be replaced; [“Manually Ejecting Used Cleaning Cartridges” on page 65](#)

Ejecting Scratch Volumes

To eject scratch volumes:

1. **Verify that the LSM where you want to eject the volumes is online.**

For example, to see the status of LSM 00:00:

```
DISPLAY LSM 00:00
```

If you get an SLS0054I message that says “LSM 00:00 now online”, you’re all set. Otherwise, you have to figure out what the problem is and, at a minimum, enter a `MODIFY LSM aa:cc ONLINE` command to get it back online.

2. Use EJECT to start the eject operation.

For example, to eject 100 scratch volumes with media `STK1R` and rectech `STK1RC` from pool `SYS19840P1`:

```
EJECT SCRATCH SUBPOOL(SYS19840P1) VOLCNT(100) MEDIA(STK1R)
RECTECH(STK1RC)
```

`WAITCAP(YES)` is the default, so when you get operator messages to empty the CAP...

3. Remove the volumes from the CAP.

Managing Cleaning Cartridges

Hopefully, you defined sufficient cleaning cartridges when you configured ELS. If not, *Configuring HSC and VTCS* tells you how. After you define the cleaning cartridges, enter them per [“Entering Cartridges” on page 61](#). There are some additional things you can do with MNTD (either via PARMLIB member or command) to manage cleaning cartridges.

Cleaning Cartridge Selection

To automatically select a cleaning cartridge when a drive needs cleaning, set the “auto clean” option on:

```
MNTD AUTOCLN (ON)
```

The drive cleaning process will select a cleaning cartridge in the LSM that is closest to the drive that needs cleaning. After the clean operation is completed, the “float” option determines whether the cartridge is returned to its home cell (float off) or assigned a new home cell in the current LSM (float on). Setting float on reduces pass-thru operations and thus enhances performance:

```
MNTD FLOAT (ON)
```

Ejecting Cleaning Cartridges

The `POOLPARM MAXCLEAN` parameter specifies the maximum number of cleaning operations for a given set of cleaning cartridges. For ELS to automatically eject cleaning cartridges that have exceeded their `MAXCLEAN` value, enter:

```
MNTD EJCTAUTO (ON)
```

If you are running ExLM, you may prefer letting ExLM manage ejecting cleaning cartridges on a scheduled basis. In this case, set “auto eject” off. This is very useful for a “lights-out” datacenter.

Without ExLM, auto-ejection is the recommended technique, otherwise you have to manually schedule cleaning with the `CLEAN` command and manually eject the cartridge when it’s used up (spent) as described in [“Manually Ejecting Used Cleaning Cartridges” on page 65](#). Auto-ejection requires an available CAP. If a CAP is not available, a manual eject is required.

Newer drives identify spent cleaning cartridges and will notify ELS regardless of the `MAXCLEAN` usage count. If “auto eject” is on, the cartridge is ejected when the library detects the “spent” condition. Otherwise, ExLM can be used to schedule the ejection of “spent” cleaning cartridges.

After you eject a cleaning cartridge, you will usually want to enter a new cartridge to replace the used one. If you want to enter a cleaning cartridge whose volser is not yet defined to ELS, see *Configuring HSC and VTCS* for information on defining cleaning cartridges.

Manually Ejecting Used Cleaning Cartridges

To replace used cleaning cartridges:

1. Verify that the LSM where you want to eject the cartridges is online.

For example, to see the status of LSM 00:00:

```
DISPLAY LSM 00:00
```

If you get an SLS0054I message that says “LSM 00:00 now online”, you’re all set. Otherwise, you have to figure out what the problem is and, at a minimum, enter a `MODIFY LSM aa:cc ONLINE` command to get it back online.

2. Use EJECT to start the eject operation.

For example, to eject a range of 9840 cleaning cartridges:

```
EJECT (CLN300-CLN310) SEQ(YES)
```

`WAITCAP(YES)` is the default, and the volumes are placed in sequence in the CAP, so when you get operator messages to empty the CAP...

3. Remove the cleaning cartridges from the CAP.

4. Check the CAP mode of the CAP where you want to enter the replacement cleaning cartridges:

For example, to see the status of the PCAP on LSM 00:00:

```
DISPLAY CAP 00:00:02
```

If the CAP mode is Automatic, go to [Step 4](#). Otherwise, continue with [Step 5](#).

5. If the CAP mode is Manual...

...you have two choices, depending on your site’s practices:

? Change the CAP mode to Automatic.

For example, for the PCAP in [Step 4](#), to set the CAP preference to zero (always required for PCAPs) and mode to Automatic:

```
CAPPREF 0 00:00:02 AUTO
```

? Use ENTER to make the CAP ready for cartridge entry (mode stays Manual).

For example, for the PCAP in [Step 4](#), to make the CAP ready for entry and set scratch status on for the entered cartridges:

```
ENTER 00:00:02 SCRATCH
```

Solving Problems

Recovering Errant Cartridges

A cartridge becomes errant when HSC is uncertain of the location of the volume in the LSM. The following conditions **may** cause a cartridge to become errant.

- ? An operator modifies an LSM offline using the FORCE option.
- ? The volume is not located in the cell location specified by the CDS.
- ? An unrecoverable error occurs in the LMU.
- ? An unrecoverable error occurs in the LSM.

Errant volume recovery is performed automatically

- ? Any time HSC attempts to use a cartridge that is marked as errant.
- ? When an ACS is connected.
- ? When an LSM is modified online.
- ? When cross host recovery is performed.

HSC issues the following message:

```
... Attempting to locate errant volume VVVVVV
```

If the cartridge is located by checking its original source location or its destination location, HSC removes it from errant status.

If the cartridge cannot be located, the operator is prompted by the following message:

```
... Volume VVVVVV not found; Eject or Ignore (E|I)?
```

Respond with one of the following:

- ? Reply “E” **if you are certain that the cartridge is not in the library**. The cartridge is deleted (logically ejected) from the CDS.
- ? Reply “I” if you do not know the location of the cartridge, to leave the cartridge in errant status. An audit trail is maintained for the cartridge, which can be helpful if it becomes necessary to manually locate the cartridge.

If the cartridge is located at a later time, HSC recognizes it as errant and removes it from errant status. The cartridge is either returned to its home cell location, or marked selected for a request.

Entering Duplicate And Unreadable VOLSERS

Entering Duplicate Volumes

When you try to enter a volume that is already recorded in the CDS, HSC attempts to locate the original cartridge by checking its home cell location or destination location. If the volume is found, the duplicate cartridge is rejected by HSC.

If the volume is not found, the HSC response is determined by the `OPTION ENTdup` command setting.

- ? If `OPTION ENTdup` is set to `Auto`, HSC automatically deletes the original volume from the CDS, and enters the new volume.
- ? If `OPTION ENTdup` is set to `Manual`, HSC requests operator assistance by issuing the following message:

```
... ENTER of volume VVVVVV encountered missing duplicate volser;  
      (Logically) Delete, or Ignore (D,I)?
```

Reply “D” to delete the original volume from the CDS and enter the new volume.

Note – Refer to `OPTION Command and Control Statement in ELS Command, Control Statement, and Utility Reference` for details on command syntax and parameters. You can enter duplicate volumes into a Streamline library as long as the library is partitioned and the duplicate volumes are entered into different partitions.

Entering Cartridges With Missing or Unreadable External Labels

Tape cartridges with unreadable labels cannot be entered into a library through a CAP. If you attempt to enter a cartridge without a label, or with a label the robot cannot read, the following HSC message is issued:

```
... UnNamed Cartridge in CAP CELL AA:LL:RR:CC;  
      reply ``V,volser`` or ``EJECT``
```

Do one of the following:

- ? Reply “V,volser” to enter the cartridge by assigning it a VOLSER. The specified VOLSER is permanently assigned to the cartridge in the CDS.

Note – If any unlabeled cartridges or cartridges with unreadable labels are manually entered into a library, they will be ejected during an audit. StorageTek recommends that users provide an external media label for all cartridges.

- ? Reply “EJECT” and remove the cartridge from the CAP when the CAP is unlocked.

Clearing Recovery Status On A CAP

When a CAP status is RECOVERY, use the following procedure to force CAP recovery.

Note – If this procedure does not clear recovery status, try “Freeing An Allocated CAP” on page 69.

To clear recovery status on a CAP:

1. Issue the following command:

```
ENTER cap-id
```

where *cap-id* is the CAP you want to recover.

The following occurs:

1. The LSM robot moves to the CAP and performs a CAP catalog.
2. If cartridges are detected in the CAP, HSC issues a message instructing the operator to remove the cartridges.
3. HSC issues the message:

```
... Open CAPid AA:LL:CC for entering when unlocked
```

4. The CAP ENTER indicator lights up or Enter appears on the display panel.

2. Issue the DRAIN command against that CAP.

The CAP is locked and the status is set to INACTIVE.

Freeing An Allocated CAP

Caution – Use this procedure only if the CAP is not in use. Releasing a CAP from an active command or utility may produce unpredictable results. Examples of these are:

- ? CAP cleanup
- ? errant cartridges
- ? cartridges still in the CAP that are unknown to HSC.

If a host terminates without performing recovery while an active process is using a CAP, the CAP remains allocated to the host and is unavailable to all other hosts. If HSC is brought back up on that host, it releases the CAP after initialization. Otherwise, you can free the CAP by issuing the following command from any connected host:

```
RELEASE cap-id
```

where:

cap-id

specifies the CAP you wish to release.

HSC issues a message prompting you to confirm that the CAP is to be released.

- ? Reply “N” to cancel the release.
- ? To proceed with the release:
 1. Verify that the CAP is not in use by visually inspecting the CAP, issuing the Display Cap command on other hosts, and checking with other personnel.
 2. Reply “Y” to the message.

Another message confirms the CAP is released.

Restoring Host-To-Host Communications Services

The `COMMPATH` command and control statement lets you define a tiered communications service between HSC hosts. With this type of service in place, HSC automatically performs a path switch if a host receives an error trying to send a message over the current communications path. Depending on the paths defined, an automatic switch can be to an equivalent path type (from one LMU path to another), or to a lower performance method (for example, from VTAM to LMU).

HSC notifies you when a switch occurs by issuing the following message to the console on both hosts:

```
... A communications path switched from XXXX1 to XXXX2; ...
```

where:

XXXX1

specifies the previous communications path.

XXXX2

specifies the current communications path.

The message also identifies the host that either initiated the switch or experienced the failure.

After HSC performs a downward switch, you can make an upward switch only with the `COMMPATH` command.

To make an upward switch:

1. Find and correct the problem which prompted the switch.
2. Return to the previous communications method by issuing the command

```
COMMPATH HOSTID(host-id) METHOD(method)
```

where:

host-id

specifies the host which the command affects.

method

specifies the method you want to be made current.

Resolving Possible Lost Mount Requests

Mounts may be lost due to one of several reasons:

- ? If SMC is inactive while HSC is active, then MVS and/or TMS messages are not intercepted.
- ? If HSC is inactive while the SMC is active, then MVS and/or TMS messages are intercepted but there is no Automated Library Control system to receive the mount request.
- ? A hardware LMU error can occur.

In general, to resolve these problems, use the SMC `RESYNC` command to redrive all lost mount requests.

Resolving Lost Mount Responses (ORH)

Occasionally a mount request gets stuck on one of the HSC queues due to a response not being received from the LMU. When this happens the volume is left in a selected status and the operator is notified by the Overdue Response Handler (ORH).

Overdue Response Handler

Every 30 seconds, the ORH scans all queues for each ACS to identify requests with sequence numbers whose response wait time intervals have expired. When a time interval expires, HSC issues the message

```
... ORH interval expired: ...
```

and the ORH checks the request type code. For all request type codes other than mount, dismount, move, and swap, the ORH automatically extends the request's wait time another increment of 3, 5, 10, or 60 minutes, and issues the message:

```
... ORH interval extended: ...
```

Operator Response Required For Mount, Dismount, Move, and Swap

For mount, dismount, move, and swap requests, the operator is prompted by the message:

```
... ORH: ABORT/EXTEND...
```

Respond with one of the following:

- ? `ABORT` — the task that requested the operation is notified that the request has been abnormally terminated by ORH. This removes the volume from selected status and lets you issue HSC Mount or DISMount commands as necessary to keep the work moving.
- ? `EXTEND` — the ORH adds another ten minute increment to the request and leaves it on the same queue that it is currently on. There is no limit to the number of extensions you can request.

Using Software Diagnostics

Some problems are beyond your ability to resolve by yourself, and usually result in a call to StorageTek Software Support, who may ask you to use one or more of the HSC software diagnostic tools described in [TABLE 3-2](#).

TABLE 3-2 HSC Software Diagnostic Tools

Diagnostic Tool	Description
Generalized Trace Facility (GTF) Tracing (GTRACE)	The Generalized Trace Facility (GTF) provides a low level history of the recent past. The HSC issues GTRACE requests for significant events during operation. Format ID and Event ID (FID and EID) are specified as parameters on the EXEC statement (PARM=) of the HSC JCL procedure (refer to “Creating an HSC START Procedure” in the <i>HSC Configuration Guide</i> for an example procedure).
Supervisor Call (SVC), Dump (SDUMP), and Abnormal End (ABEND) Dumps	SVC and ABEND dumps are taken where appropriate to diagnose software failures. Do not use SYSUDUMP, SYSMDUMP or SYSABEND DD statements in HSC JCL. These ABEND types do not provide enough information on the HSC address space.
Error Recording Data Sets (ERDS)	Software failures are logged into these error recording data sets. 4480 Cartridge Subsystem and 3278 Terminal Subsystem Error Recording Data Set (ERDS) records are written by MVS routines.
Llist Command	The Llist command is used to display an HSC data structure and to provide for diagnostic support for the HSC. Use this command under the direction of StorageTek support personnel.
Display Command	The Display command offers several options that are useful for diagnostic purposes.

Using the VTCS Dashboard

“Using the VTCS Dashboard” is basically about reviewing your MVC and VTC reports. The main pieces and parts of your virtual tape configuration are VTSSs, VTDS, VTVs, RTDs, and MVCs, and so it’s not surprising that a lot of your daily and weekly routine is making sure they’re all operating normally.

Checking Virtual Tape Status (Daily)

Think of a VTSS as the virtual counterpart of a Nearline ACS, a VTD as the virtual counterpart of a Nearline real tape drive, and a VTV as the virtual counterpart of a Nearline volume, and it's easy to see why it's important to make sure all your VTSSs, VTDs, and VTVs are operating normally.

? To check Virtual Tape status:

1. Enter a Display VTSS command.

You should see something like [FIGURE 4-1](#).

VTSSNAME	CAPACITY (MB)	DBU	HI	LOW	VTV	MX	MN	DEF	AUTOMIG	STATE
			AMT	AMT	COUNT	MT	MT	ACS		
HBVTSS16	56,209	55	80	60	2440	6	3	02		ONLINE
HBVTSS17	56,209	50	80	60	2180	6	3	02		ONLINE
HBVTSS18	56,209	52	80	60	2288	6	3	01		ONLINE
HBVTSS19	93,184	45	80	60	1900	6	3	01		ONLINE

FIGURE 4-1 Example output from Display VTSS - Good VTSS status

[FIGURE 4-1](#) shows the status of four “operating correctly” VTSSs:

- ? First, all VTSSs are online, which is usually good.
- ? The LAMTs are all 60 and the HAMTs are all 80, which are good ranges for optimizing VTSS usage and promoting effective automatic migration.
- ? The DBUs are all well lower than the HAMT, which means there's still space to grow on the VTSS before auto-migration starts. You might even consider routing more work to these VTSSs to optimize your investment in virtual tape.
- ? Let's assume you have 8 RTDs connected to each VTSSs. The MX MTs (maximum migration tasks) are set at 6 and the MN MTs (minimum migration tasks) are set at 3, which are good numbers. The max of 6 leaves 2 RTDs for recalls/reclaims, and the minimum of 3 ensures that if a bunch of migrations suddenly start, there are enough tasks to handle the load.

What if Display VTSS doesn't look so good? Maybe something like [FIGURE 4-2...](#)

VTSSNAME	CAPACITY (MB)	DBU	HI AMT	LOW AMT	VTV COUNT	MX MT	MN MT	DEF ACS	AUTOMIG	STATE
HBVTSS16	56,209	90	80	60	27,888	4	2	02		ONLINE
HBVTSS17	56,209	92	80	60	28,974	4	2	02		ONLINE
HBVTSS18	56,209	90	80	60	22,005	4	2	01		ONLINE
HBVTSS19	93,184	92	80	60	26,009	4	2	01		ONLINE

FIGURE 4-2 Example Output from Display VTSS - VTSSs with Major Operational Issues

[FIGURE 4-2](#) shows the status of four VTSSs that have some major operational issues:

- ? At least they're all online...if not, unless you know a reason why they ought to be offline or in maintenance mode, enter some Vary VTSS commands to get them back online.
- ? The DBUs are all too high. Anything in the 90 plus range means the VTSSs are struggling to auto-migrate VTVs, which isn't surprising because...
- ? ...again, let's assume you have 8 RTDs connected to each VTSSs. The MX MTs (maximum migration tasks) are set at 4 and the MN MT (minimum migration tasks) are set at 2, which is definitely a little light for the current migration load.

To fix the problem, go to [Step 2](#).

2. If you didn't like what you saw in [Step 1](#), tune up your operating parameters.

First, get some more migration tasks going:

```
set migopt vtss(vtssname) maxmig(8) minmig(8) high(70) low(40)
```

You now have all RTDs fully engaged in migration on all VTSSs. Keep it that way until you get the DBU under control, then go back to something like 6 max, 3 minimum. You also changed the AMTs to 40 low, 70 high. This will get you out of trouble, and the next time around, migration will start sooner and bring the buffer to a lower DBU.

Next, enter a Display VTD to get a picture of your system's VTDs.

FIGURE 4-3 shows an example of Display VTD output.

DRIVE	LOCATION	VTV	STATUS
A800	HBVTSS16	X00778	MOUNTED
A801	HBVTSS16	X00775	MOUNTED
A802	HBVTSS16		AVAILABLE
A803	HBVTSS16		AVAILABLE
.			
.			
.			

FIGURE 4-3 Example output from Display VTD - Operating Correctly

Once again, we're in good shape in FIGURE 4-3 with some VTDs in use and others ready to be used.

What if all VTDs showed VTVs mounted? Not so good, because then you risk job allocation failures if no drives are available. If it's because of something like the problem that occurred in Step 2, then just accept it and vow that, in the future, you'll arrange workloads to let your VTDs better handle the influx of data. If this is a long term problem, however, you may need a more power...more VTSSs, or upgrades to VTSSs with more capacity and more VTDs.

3. Now it's time to see if you have enough scratch VTVs on hand...

...by entering a Display SCRATCH command, which produces the output shown in FIGURE 4-4.

SUBPOOL-NAME	SCRATCH-COUNT
VIR000	14,364
VIR0002	13,582
VIRTUAL	19,132
VIRTUAL1	9,905

FIGURE 4-4 Example output from Display SCRATCH

In FIGURE 4-4, what you're seeing are VTV scratch counts for HSC subpools. If you don't use HSC subpools for VTVs, you'll see VTV scratch counts for all VTVs defined to your system. There are no good or bad numbers for scratch counts, as long as you have some scratch VTVs available. The "right number of available scratches" depends on your shop's needs and workload.

Let's say that FIGURE 4-4 showed 50 or fewer scratches available for each subpool. You might be a little concerned, right? If this happens, you can do one or more of the following:

- Free VTV volumes by scratching VTVs with data that is not current. This is the move to make if you have enough total VTVs in your system, but there aren't enough scratch volumes available.

Actually, you don't do the scratching, it's your TMS that's supposed to do the work, and the initial configuration should have defined your VTV volumes to your TMS. If that didn't happen, go back and do it. More likely, you may have added VTV ranges via the VTCS CONFIG statement and forgot to define the new ranges to your TMS, so go back and fix that problem. This is all described in *Installing ELS*.

Note, however, that marking VTVs as scratch via your TMS is just part of the solution. What also has to happen is that somebody in VSM-land has to mark the VTV data non-current (and therefore, writeable), and, in the case of VTSS-resident VTVs, delete them from the buffer.

Because actually deleting VTV data is a significant decision (data gone, never to return...), we're going to make a judgement call and say it's an "as-needed" task, so if you go this route, turn to "[Deleting Scratch VTVs](#)" on page 105.

- 7 Use POOLPARAM/VOLPARAM to add VTVs. This is your next best option, and you do it when you really do not have any VTVs with non-current data. It turns out that it's not just POOLPARAM/VOLPARAM...you also have to do the appropriate TMS definitions, and so forth. Again, this is all described in *Installing ELS*.
- 7 Change your TAPEREQ statements or SMS routines to temporarily reroute tape work to Nearline HSC processing until you can define additional VTVs. This is probably your least desirable option, because you're essentially sending data directly to Nearline tape that you originally intended to send to VSM...so cleaning up the mess is not trivial. Still, if you have Nearline resources available and you have an immediate need to write data to scratch volumes, this is the (temporary) way to go.

Checking Nearline Tape Status (Daily)

In “[Checking Virtual Tape Status \(Daily\)](#)” on page 74, we talked about how important it is to ensure that your system’s VTSS, VTDs, and VTVs are operating normally.

Think of the Nearline component of VSM (RTDs and MVCs), the place where VTVs are being migrated to and recalled from, with some MVC space reclamation going on in the background, and you’ll agree that this area deserves your full attention, too.

? To check Nearline Tape status:

1. Enter a Display RTD.

A good picture might be something like [FIGURE 4-5](#).

RTD	STATUS	MOUNT	ALLOC	HOST	VTSS
B200	ONLINE/FREE	-	-	-	HBVTSS16
B201	ONLINE/FREE	-	-	-	HBVTSS16
0B79	ONLINE/FREE	-	-	-	HBVTSS16
0B7A	RECALL VTV	DMV051*	DMV051	EC20	HBVTSS16
1600	MVS1 :MIGRATE	-	-	-	-
1601	MVS1 :MIGRATE	-	-	-	-
.					
.					
.					

FIGURE 4-5 Example output from a VT Display RTD command - All is well

In [FIGURE 4-5 on page 78](#), things are moving along smartly because there's a good balance of RTDs migrating, recalling, and available for new work...which is **not** true in [FIGURE 4-6](#).

RTD	STATUS	MOUNT	ALLOC	HOST	VTSS
B200	MVS1	:MIGRATE	-	-	-
B201	MVS1	:MIGRATE	-	-	-
0B79	MVS2	:MIGRATE	-	-	-
0B7A	MVS2	:MIGRATE	-	-	-
1600	MVS1	:MIGRATE	-	-	-
1601	MVS1	:MIGRATE	-	-	-
.					
.					
.					

FIGURE 4-6 Example output from a VT Display RTD command - RTDs in Distress

If [FIGURE 4-6](#) is a result of the kind of emergency measures employed in [Step 2](#), then there's not much you can do other than wait until things quiet down. If, however, you do have other RTDs available...for example, RTDs that you are sharing manually with MVS and VSM...by all means, vary them offline to MVS and use Vary RTD to make them available to VTCS.

2. Next, see how your MVCs are doing with a Display MVCPool command.

FIGURE 4-7 shows an example of Display MVCPool output with no MVC pool name specified, so you see information for all your system's MVCs.

MVCPOOL INFORMATION							
ACS	MEDIA	FREE-MVCS		RECLAIM-MVCS		USED-MVCS	
		VOLS	GB	VOLS	GB	VOLS	GB
00	ECART	310	248	4	1.2	100	65
00	ZCART	120	192	1	0.5	250	400
00	TOTAL	430	440	5	1.7	350	465
01	ECART	90	144	15	6.2	322	485
01	ZCART	35	700	3	11.3	43	675
01	TOTAL	125	844	18	17.5	365	1160
NON-LIB	STK2P	22	1100	0	0	12	1565
NON-LIB	TOTAL	22	1100	0	0	12	1565

FIGURE 4-7 Example output from Display MVCPool (no pool name specified)

FIGURE 4-7 shows that your MVC collection is in good condition. There appear to be plenty of Free MVCs (100% usable space, no migrated VTVs) and plenty of free space across multiple ACSs and MVC media types. Numbers for MVCs eligible for reclaim are relatively low, meaning that automatic space reclamation probably won't get in the way of migrate/recall activity.

Used MVCs looks okay in proportion to Free MVCs, except maybe in ACS 01, ECART and ZCART media. For these MVCs, you might want to do some investigation...find out which Storage Classes represent these MVCs, which Management Classes correspond to these Storage Classes, maybe scratch some VTVs by Management Class.

What if Display MVCPool showed you something like [FIGURE 4-8](#)?

MVCPool INFORMATION							
ACS	MEDIA	FREE-MVCS		RECLAIM-MVCS		USED-MVCS	
		VOLS	GB	VOLS	GB	VOLS	GB
00	ECART	310	248	4	1.2	300	65
00	ZCART	120	192	1	0.5	250	400
00	TOTAL	430	440	5	1.7	350	465
01	ECART	10	15	35	18.2	382	585
01	ZCART	5	100	20	511.3	53	1675
01	TOTAL	115	115	55	529.5	365	1160
NON-LIB	STK2P	22	1100	0	0	12	1565
NON-LIB	TOTAL	22	1100	0	0	12	1565

FIGURE 4-8 Example output from Display MVCPool - Problem in ACS01

As you can see, things have gotten worse in ACS 01. What do you do now? Well, consider the following, probably in this order:

- ? Do demand reclamation to free space; for more information, see [“Doing Demand MVC Space Reclamations” on page 90](#).
- ? Add MVCs as described in [“Adding MVCs” on page 95](#).
- ? Find out which Storage Classes represent these MVCs, which Management Classes correspond to these Storage Classes, maybe scratch some VTVs by Management Class.

As a follow-up, review your current policies and adjust as needed. You may be able to create free MVCs or free space on MVCs by changing these policies.

Looking at the Big Picture (Weekly)

This one isn't too complicated, and basically consists of running your other two primary status tools (MVC Report and VTV Report) on a weekly basis.

Using the VTV Report

Note – The VTV report is run via one of the following commands:

- ? VTVRPT BASIC, which shows all VTV copies migrated to MVCs via the EXPORT command.
- ? VTVRPT COPIES, which shows all VTV copies migrated to MVCs via the EXPORT command, and, additionally, all VTV copies migrated via the EEXPORT command.

Let's start with a VTV Report, which looks like [FIGURE 4-9](#).

SLUADMIN (7.1.0)		STORAGETEK VTCS SYTEM UTILITY										PAGE 0002					
TIME 06:32:03		VTCS VTV REPORT										DATE 2010-03-20					
VTV	SIZE	COMP %	<---CREATION--->		<---LAST USED--->		MIG R	SC RT	RE SD	RE PL	MGM T	MVC1	MVC2	MVC3	MVC4	MAX	VTSS NAME
VOLSER	(MB)		DATE	TIME	DATE	TIME					CLASS						
X00T00	0.04	84	2010JUL16	05:02:08	2010JUL19	05:41:00	M	-	R	-		02255	022551	022552	022553	.8	VTSS16
											VCL4	0					
X00002	<MOUNT>		2010JUL14	06:54:35	2010JUL19	07:43:46	M	-	R	-		03355	033551	033552	033553	.8	VTSS17
											VCL4	0					
X00003	15.60	84	2010JUL14	10:05:05	2010JUL19	05:41:28	M	-	R	-		04455	044551			.4	VTSS16
											VCL2	0					
X00004	0.36	84	2010MAY28	08:51:20	2010JUL19	05:41:30	M	S	R	-		02255	022551	022552		.8	VTSS16
											VCL3	0					
X00005	15.60	84	2010JUL14	10:05:14	2010JUL19	05:41:31	M	-	R	-		03355				.4	VTSS16
											VCL1	0					
X00006	15.60	84	2010JUL14	10:08:23	2010JUL19	08:45:31	C	-	-	-		04455	044551	044552	044553	.8	VTSS17
											VCL4	0					

FIGURE 4-9 Example output from VTVRPT

At first glance, the VTV Report looks overwhelming and non-intuitive...a lot lines of data each describing everything you ever wanted to know about each and every VTV in your system.

What are some ways you can make a VTV Report more useful to your situation? To start with, you can run the VTVRPT utility against a list of volsers, a volser range, or even an individual volser. So if you have specific VTVs in mind that you want examine, use one of these selection options.

Second, the VTVRPT utility also provides the OPTION(UNAVAIL) parameter, which produces a report on unavailable VTVs that looks like [FIGURE 4-10](#).

SLUADMIN (7.1.0)		STORAGETEK VTCS SYTEM UTILITY										PAGE 002			
TIME 06:59:03		UNAVAIL MOUNTED VTV REPORT										DATE 2010-03-20			
VTV	SIZE	COMP %	<---CREATION--->	<---LAST USED--->	MIG R	SC RT	RE SD	RE PL	MGM T	MVC1	MVC2	MVC3	MVC4	MAX	VTSS NAME
VOLSE R	(MB)		DATE	TIME	DATE	TIME			CLASS						VTV
Y09053	<MOUNT>		2010MAR19	09:34:14	2010MAR20	05:55:44	-	-	R	-	M9			.8	HBVTS S16
SLUADMIN (7.1.0)		STORAGETEK VTCS SYTEM UTILITY										PAGE 003			
TIME 06:59:03		UNAVAIL RESIDENT VTV REPORT										DATE 2010-03-20			
VTV	SIZE	COMP %	<---CREATION--->	<---LAST USED--->	MIG R	SC RT	RE SD	RE PL	MGM T	MVC1	MVC2	MVC3	MVC4	MAX	VTSS NAME
VOLSE R	(MB)		DATE	TIME	DATE	TIME			CLASS						VTV
X01007	156.24	89	2010JAN10	03:00:02	2010MAR01	04:51:47	-	S	R	-					HBVTS S16
X01010	3.90	0	2010MAR01	09:10:37	2010MAR01	09:10:37	-	-	R	-					HBVTS S16
X01014	3.90	0	2010MAR01	09:11:08	2010MAR01	09:11:08	-	-	R	-					HBVTS S16
X01021	3.90	0	2010MAR01	09:21:11	2010MAR01	09:21:11	-	-	R	-					HBVTS S16
SLUADMIN (7.1.0)		STORAGETEK VTCS SYTEM UTILITY										PAGE 004			
TIME 06:59:03		UNAVAIL FENCED VTV REPORT										DATE 2010-03-20			
VTV	SIZE	COMP %	<---CREATION--->	<---LAST USED--->	MIG R	SC RT	RE SD	RE PL	MGM T	MVC1	MVC2	MVC3	MVC4	MAX	VTSS NAME
VOLSE R	(MB)		DATE	TIME	DATE	TIME			CLASS						VTV
X01280	<FENCE D>						-	-	-	-					
X04762	<FENCE D>						-	-	-	-					
X04776	<FENCE D>						-	-	-	-					
X02019	<FENCE D>						-	-	-	-					
X10066	<FENCE D>						-	-	-	-					
X10068	<FENCE D>						-	-	-	-					

FIGURE 4-10 Example output from VTVRPT (UNAVAIL option)

Obviously, if you have had any reports of jobs (or VTCS) being unable to access VTVs that you thought were resident, OPTION(UNAVAIL) is the way to go.

Let's also talk about the flexibility you get with XML output from the VTVRPT utility. You can generate, for selected reports and utilities, output in either Structured XML or Comma Separated Variables (CSV) XML.

What's the difference between Structured XML and CSV output? Consider this:

- ⤵ Structured XML contains all of the tags and structures shown for each command or utility (which you can then process, as desired, using a programming language of your choice).
- ⤵ CSV output lets you select only the tags (and their order) that you want. Each output line contains a fixed number of fields separated by commas, which can then be input into spreadsheets or report writers for customizable analysis or reports.

So you now have two ways you can effectively customize a basic VTV Report for your shop's needs. For more information on this topic, see *ELS Programming Reference*.

Finally, you should be aware that LCM provides enhanced management and reporting capabilities that correspond to ELS/VTCS functions, including the VTCS MVC and VTV Reports. For more information, see [“LCM Control Statements” on page 153](#).

Using the MVC Report

Finally, let's look at an MVC Summary Report, which looks like [FIGURE 4-11](#).

SLUADMIN (7.1.0)				STORAGETEK VTCS SYTEM UTILITY							PAGE 0002	
TIME 09:26:54				VTCS MVC SUMMARY REPORT							DATE 2010-04-13	
MVC	NUMBER	%USED	%AVAIL	%FRAG	MEDIA	TIMES	STATUS	<-----LAST MOUNTED----->			A C S	OWNER/ S
VOLSER	OF VTVS				SIZE (MB)	MOUNT ED	I B L D R U T M	DATE	TIME	VTSS	I	CONSOLIDA D TE TIME
EVS99	200	10.80	84.57	4.63	2000	310	I - - - U - M	2010MAR1 5	03:20:23	VTSS8	0	S1 0
EVS100	0	0.00	100.00	0.00	UNKNOW N	206	- - L - - U - -	2010MAR1 0	05:24:04	VTSS8	--	
EVS101	1009	99.00	0.00	1.00	400	306	I - - - U - -	2010MAR1 5	03:20:23	VTSS8	0	S1 0
EVS102	5	8.25	91.75	0.00	400	6	I - - - U - -	2010MAR1 5	04:23:04	VTSS8	0	S3 0
EVS103	EXPVTV	0.12	99.88	0.00	400	194	I - - - J - -	2010MAR1 5	03:20:28	VTSS10	0	VTSS10 0
EVS104	0	0.00	100.00	0.00	400	5	I - - - R C - -	2010MAR1 8	03:49:14	VTSS8	0	2010APR12 0
												03:49:14
EVS104	200	10.80	84.57	4.63	102040	254	I - - - R U T -	2010MAR1 8	04110:09	VTSS8	0	0
EVS105	300	15.80	54.57	4.63	102040	154	I - - - R U W -	2010MAR1 8	04110:09	VTSS8	0	0
EVS106	0	0.00	100.00	0.00	400	202	I - - - C - -	2010MAR1 8	03:49:20	VTSS8	0	0
EVS107	0	0.00	100.00	0.00	400	171	I - - - R E - -	2010MAR1 8	04:13:00	VTSS8	0	0
		137	Initialized MVCs processed									
		8	Non-Initialized MVCs processed									

FIGURE 4-11 Example MVC summary report

The MVC Summary Report is a lot like the stock VTV Report...nice, if you know what you're looking for, Too Much Information otherwise.

What's perhaps more useful in a Big Picture sense are the additional fields you get from an MVC Detailed Report, as shown in [FIGURE 4-12](#).

SLUADMIN (7.1.0)		STORAGETEK VTCS SYTEM UTILITY			PAGE 0003	
TIME 11:28:30		MVC EVS102 DETAIL REPORT			DATE 2010-06-03	
VTV	SIZE	BLOCK	MANAGEMENT	MIGRATION	BLOCK	MESSAGE
VOLSER	(MB)	ID	CLASS	DATE	COUNT	
X20041	76.00	00000000	M5	2010JAN08	10	
X20043	76.00	134009C7	M5		9	
X20044	76.00	2A40138D	M5	2010JAN08	9	
X20045	76.00	C6401D53	M3		10	
X20047	76.00	A5402719	M3		10	
5 VTVS FOUND FOR MVC:EVS102						
WARNING VTV COUNT:5 DOES NOT MATCH MVC SUMMARY RECORD VTV COUNT:22 FOR MVC:EVS102						

FIGURE 4-12 Example MVC detailed report (additional fields)

Here's some detailed information about the VTVs on an MVC that you can do some diagnostic work with, if necessary.

Just as is now available with the VTV Report, you can also do either of the following with the MVC Report:

- ? Generate output in either Structured XML or Comma Separated Variables (CSV) XML as described in *ELS Programming Reference*.
- ? Use the corresponding LCM reports, as described in [“LCM Control Statements” on page 153](#).

So, In Closing...

...that's about all there is to using the VTCS Dashboard. Sure, there's a bunch of other tasks you could do, and probably will do, such as but not limited to running MVC Pool Reports if you used Named MVC Pools. But that's information for “As Needed” management tasks.

The main thing you should learn from this chapter is do your dailies per [“Checking Virtual Tape Status \(Daily\)” on page 74](#) and [“Checking Nearline Tape Status \(Daily\)” on page 78](#) and your weeklies per [“Looking at the Big Picture \(Weekly\)” on page 82](#), and you'll keep your VTCS system running properly...

Working the VTCS Must Do (Sometime) Chores List

Welcome to the “VTCS Must Do (Sometimes) Chores List,” a. k. a., the “As-Needed Tasks List.” For example, let’s say that this is the week you decide to run DELETSCR to zero out a list of scratched VTVs that are tying up major amounts of your valuable VTSS and MVC space. Great, job well done. How long do you think it’s going to be before you have to run the same operation? Especially if you don’t change your delete on scratch policies? Answer: It might be a day, a month, or a year, but you’ll get to do it again.

No worries, however. We’re here to help with useful procedures to pare down the Must Do (Sometime) List, and, as you’ve already seen from reading [“Using the VTCS Dashboard” on page 73](#), if you keep a close eye on your MVC and VTV reports, you may not even *need* a list, because they will tell you when it’s time to do the Must Do/As Needed chores.

There is also another class of “Must Do (Sometime)” chores that are almost policy decisions, but we’ll include them here because (a) they’re proactive in nature, which makes them doubly valuable as Best Practices “As Needed” chores, and (b) they’re operating techniques you can use, back out, and reintroduce as they benefit (or not) your shop at any point in time. Having said that, let’s lead off with three of our favorites in this category as described in [“Doing Demand Space Reclamations, Migrations, and Recalls” on page 90](#).

Doing Demand Space Reclamations, Migrations, and Recalls

These tasks are optional, but, especially in the case of Demand Space Reclamations, *highly* recommended Best Practices for reasons that will soon become obvious.

Doing Demand MVC Space Reclamations

As you already know, VSM automatically reclaims space only one MVC at a time on each host running reclamations, the key word being *automatically*. That means that space reclamation is always out there looking for work, and although it is a background task, if you've got a lot of fragmented MVCs, the space reclamation work can seriously interfere with migration/recall, especially during peak processing periods.

If your MVC summary report or Display MVCPool shows a high level of fragmentation on your system's MVCs (and this level is below the value specified on the CONFIG RECLAIM THRESHLD parameter or the MVCPool THRESH parameter), you may want to schedule demand MVC space reclamation as an off-hours batch job.

You do demand MVC space reclamation with RECLaim. Open up your *ELS Command, Control Statement, and Utility Reference* and you'll see some useful tools you can use to optimize demand reclamation and run it most efficiently:

- ? You can use **one only** of the MVCPOOL, STORCLAS, ACSid, or MVC parameters to filter the list of MVCs to process. Your MVC and VTV reports, as described in [“Using the VTCS Dashboard” on page 73](#), help you narrow the list of likely candidates to an MVC Pool, Storage Class, specific ACS, or range or list of MVCs. Input this list into RECLaim, and you're using the right tool for the job.

Note that if you do not specify one of these parameters, space reclamation selects MVCs from the Named MVC Pool (if implemented) or media type (for multiple MVC media environments) most in need of free space.

- ? The parameters MAXMVC (max MVCs processed by a single space reclamation task), THRESH (MVC's fragmented percentage that make it a reclaim candidate), and CONMVC (the maximum number of MVCs that VTCS concurrently processes for both drain and reclaim) let you override the corresponding CONFIG RECLAIM global parameters for the demand reclamation. This gives you the ability to tune your demand migrations to be more or less aggressive than your automatic migrations.
- ? NOWAIT is a way of speeding up the process and CONMVC is another tuning method for influencing the number of MVCs processed at a time (see *ELS Command, Control Statement, and Utility Reference* for details).
- ? ELAPSE is a way to detect if no demand reclaims have happened within an interval you specify. If there are no reclaims in this period, the job stops.
- ? **Also note that** VTCS enforces the **strictest** limiting factor. For example, if you run RECLAIM and specify ELAPSE equal to 5 hours and MAXMVC equal to 10 *and* VTCS reclaims 10 MVCs in one hour, then VTCS terminates the reclaim before the ELAPSE value expires.
- ? VTCS and HSC must be active to process a RECLAIM request.

Doing Demand VTV Migrations

As we already noted, VTCS/ELS is basically a server. For example, VSM automatically manages VTSS space and migrates VTVs to ensure a balance of optimum data availability, resource use, and data protection.

That's great for a stable environment, but what if you find out your VSM system is about to receive a whole lot of application data? Answer: It might be time to run a demand migration batch job to free VTSS space before the aforementioned peak tape processing event occurs.

You do demand migrates with, of course, MIGRATE, which provides the following options:

- ? You can migrate VTVs by volser (repeats allowed), Management Class, or...and this is really effective...the data set name associated with the VTV. There's also a DELETE(YES) option that you may want to employ that deletes the VTV from VTSS space after a successful migration. You typically use DELETE (YES) (the default) for VTVs not likely to be reaccessed. As an alternative, you can specify DELETE (NO) to ensure that critical data is available and quickly migrated for VTVs likely to be reaccessed.
- ? The NOWAIT option helps you speed up the process. That's all using MIGRATE Format 1; see *ELS Command, Control Statement, and Utility Reference* for details.
- ? As an alternative, you can use MIGRATE Format 2 to do a demand migrate-to-threshold for all or specific VTSSs. That's a nice tool for getting your DBU where you want it, and VTCS deals with the details.

Also note that, with SET MIGopt, you can lower the high AMT to effectively force a demand migration.

Doing Demand VTV Recalls

VTCS provides an automatic recall process which starts when a job requests a data set on a VTV that is migrated to tape, but not VTSS-resident. What if, however, you have the reverse of the above situation? For example, you're doing end-of-year processing, and *know* there's a bunch of jobs that will want to read data from VTVs that are on tape only. Demand recall is the solution.

RECALL provides you with all the granularity of control you need:

- ? As with MIGRATE, you can recall VTVs by volser, Management Class, or associated data set name.
- ? You can specify the VTSS where you want to recall the VTVs. Otherwise, the default is the VTSS of creation...there are some considerations associated with the VTSS recall policy; see *ELS Command, Control Statement, and Utility Reference* for details.
- ? RECALWER lets you specify whether you want to recall VTVs with read data checks...
- ? ...and there is a NOWAIT option to speed things up.

Working with RTDs

There's a lot of RTD management that we'll confine to "Finding and Fixing VTCS Problems", because they're almost exclusively error recovery scenarios. Best Practices for RTDs would be to have enough of them and keep all of the above up and running. Remember, RTDs get used for migrates, recalls, *and* reclaims, so keeping the right mix of RTDs for all of these jobs is a critical balancing act...and we already talked about the operating parameters you can use to adjust this mix in "[Checking Virtual Tape Status \(Daily\)](#)" on page 74.

In addition to adjusting the RTD operating parameters, the other main tool you have with RTDs is the VTCS Vary RTD command, which you use to change RTD states. You can vary RTDs online, offline, or into maintenance mode if you need to do maintenance on the RTD.

The major as-needed tasks you're likely to encounter are related, and the first two use Vary RTD:

- ? "[Changing RTD Device Types](#)" on page 93, which is basically how to do a technology upgrade of some or all of your system's RTDs.
- ? There is a special use of varying RTDs offline/online, and we describe that in "[Sharing Transports Between VSM and MVS](#)" on page 94.
- ? You need to consider the way you specify MVC media. Yes, I know...these are really *MVC* considerations. They come about, however, because of a change of RTD device types; for more information, see *Configuring HSC and VTCS*.

Changing RTD Device Types

Use the following procedure to change RTD device types. **Note that** changing RTD device types requires you to **stop VTCS on all hosts**.

To change RTD device types, do the following:

1. Review your VSM policies.

For example, you may want to review your Management Class and Storage Class definitions if this RTD device type is used for migrations.

2. Vary the old RTDs offline to VTCS.

3. If the new RTD devices use new MVS device addresses, do the following:

- ? Define the new addresses to MVS.
- ? Run DECOM to output your CONFIG statements.
- ? Edit the CONFIG statements to change the RTD addresses to the new values.
- ? Run CONFIG RESET.

Caution – Do **not** vary the new transports online to MVS! Otherwise, they can be allocated as Nearline transports.

4. Install the new RTDs.

5. Vary the LSM(s) where transports were replaced to offline status.

6. Vary the LSM(s) where transports were replaced to online status.

7. Vary the new RTDs online to VTCS.

8. If necessary, add MVCs.

For more information, see [“Adding MVCs” on page 95](#).

Sharing Transports Between VSM and MVS

VSM **does not** support dynamic sharing of transports between VSM and MVS. That is, a transport cannot simultaneously be online to both MVS and to VSM as an RTD. But what you *can* do is have an RTD that is online to VTCS, vary it offline to VSM, then MVS vary it online to MVS to use as a pure Nearline drive. Or vice versa. There are, of course, some considerations, see below.

Caution – Note the following:

- ? You **must have physical connectivity** from VSM and MVS to support sharing transports between the two. For example, you can use an ESCON director to allow both MVS and VSM to physically connect to the same RTD.
- ? **Do not**, therefore, use MIM, JES3, or tape autoswitch or similar facilities to manage RTDs, otherwise an RTD can be brought online to both MVS and VSM, which can cause data loss.

If the RTD is defined to MVS, however, you can use Vary RTD to vary the RTD offline to VSM, then use the MVS VARY command to vary the transport online to MVS. Note, however, that varying RTDs offline to VSM can impact migration, recall, and reclaim processing, especially during peak VSM workloads. Similarly, if a transport is defined to MVS and also defined to VSM as an RTD, you can vary it offline to MVS, then online to VSM. Each VTSS must have a minimum of two library-attached transports as RTDs for each media type used for MVCs.

Tip – You may want to define additional RTDs as backups (up to the limit of 8 RTDs per VTSS) and vary them offline to VSM until needed. If an online RTD malfunctions, you can vary it offline and vary a backup RTD online until the malfunctioning RTD is repaired or replaced. You can also vary backup RTDs online for peak load VTV migration or recall processing.

When a transport is online to VSM as an RTD, the logrec type OBR and MDR records for the RTD always show a channel path ID of 00, which has no meaning to the host because the transport is not online to MVS

Working with MVCs

As you already know, it's somewhat difficult to limit a discussion to any one of your virtual entities. MVCs contain VTVs, so it's hard to talk about either in isolation, because you inevitably end up talking about the other...and if you're discussing VTVs, you're also talking about VTSSs...and VTDs.

Having said that, the following sections are some basic procedures for doing fairly typical "as-needed" tasks with MVCs that are done for a number of reasons. For example, you might add MVCs because you're running out of space per the scenario described previously...or because you're being proactive and *don't* want to get into trouble.

? Adding MVCs

If you haven't heard, ELS 7.0 just made adding volumes a **whole** lot easier. You now use the HSC VOLPARM and POOLPARM statements to define **all** volumes and their pools...native Nearline volumes, cleaning cartridges, MVCs, and VTVs...and the HSC SET VOLPARM utility to load them. For more information, see *Configuring HSC and VTCS* and *ELS Command, Control Statement, and Utility Reference*.

To add MVCS:

- 1. Create a VOLPARM statement to define the MVCs.**

For example, to define a range of T10000 Full volumes to be encrypted:

```
VOLPARM VOLSER (T10K2000-T10K2999) MEDIA (T10000T1) RECTECH (T1AE)
```

- 2. Create a POOLPARM statement to define the MVC pool.**

For example, to define the T10000 MVC Pool with reclaim parameters:

```
POOLPARM NAME (SYS1MVCT1) TYPE (MVC) MVCFREE (40) MAXMVC (4) THRESH (60)  
START (70)
```

- 3. Create/update your MGMTCLAS/STORCLAS statements as needed.**

For example, if you added a new MVC media type, follow the recommendations in *Configuring HSC and VTCS*.

- 4. Update your POLICY/TAPEREQ output parameters as required.**

For example, if you created a new Management Class in [Step 3](#), update/create your TAPEREQ or POLICY statements to point to the new Management Class.

- 5. Do you need to define VTVs?**

If so, go to [“Defining VTVs” on page 96](#). Otherwise, go to [“Validating and Applying the Volume Definitions” on page 96](#).

Defining VTVs

To define VTVs:

1. **Create POOLPARAM/VOLPARAM statements to define the VTVs.**

For example, to define two ranges of VTVs for use by hosts MVS1 and MVS2:

```
POOLPARAM NAME (SYS1VTV1) TYPE (SCRATCH)
VOLPARAM VOLSER (V5000-V5499) MEDIA (VIRTUAL)
```

```
POOLPARAM NAME (SYS1VTV2) TYPE (SCRATCH)
VOLPARAM VOLSER (V5500-V5999) MEDIA (VIRTUAL)
```

2. Go to [“Validating and Applying the Volume Definitions” on page 96...](#)

Validating and Applying the Volume Definitions

1. **Run SET VOLPARAM to validate the VOLPARAM/POOLPARAM statements.**

```
SET VOLPARAM APPLY (NO)
```

APPLY (NO) validates the statements without loading them. If you like the results, go to [Step 2](#). Otherwise, rework your volume definitions, then go to [Step 2](#).

2. **Run SET VOLPARAM to load the VOLPARAM/POOLPARAM statements.**

```
SET VOLPARAM APPLY (YES)
```

3. **Physically enter any real cartridges into the ACS.**
4. For more information, see [“Entering Cartridges” on page 61](#).

Removing MVCs from the Pool

Why would you remove MVCs from the pool? Lots of reasons, where a typical scenario might be that you're swapping out older drives for a technology refresh for your RTDs, and you want to retire the old media....in which case, you get to add new MVCs to the pool as described in [“Adding MVCs” on page 95](#) and then remove the old media as described in [“Permanently Removing MVCs” on page 98](#)”.

Note that there are occasions where you might want to temporarily remove MVCs from the pool. For example, you've got some bad media or suspected bad media. You want to remove the bad media and put in replacements, basically under the same volsers as described in [“Temporarily Removing MVCs” on page 99](#)

? Permanently Removing MVCs

To permanently remove MVCs from the pool, do the following:

1. Enter MVCDRAIN to drain the MVCs.

For example, to run the MVCDRAIN to drain the MVCs in Storage Class STORCL1, virtually eject the MVCs, and return after the request is submitted, enter the following:

```
MVCDRAIN STORCLAS (STORCL1) EJECT NOWAIT
```

2. If the MVCs are no longer required in an ACS, use an HSC Eject command to eject the MVCs from the ACS.

3. Remove the security restrictions, and tape management system restrictions you defined for the MVC.

If you use VOLPARM/POOLPARM definitions and the virtual CDS level is G or above, continue with [Step 4](#). Otherwise, go to [Step 5](#).

4. If you want to reuse the tape volser for Nearline (non-VTCS) usage and use VOLPARM/POOLPARM definitions:

- a. Update the POOLPARM/VOLPARM statements for the MVCs you want to remove.
- b. Run `SET VOLPARM APPLY (YES)` on all hosts to apply the changes.
- c. Run the HSC `SCRATCH` command to scratch the volumes that are no longer MVCs.

5. If you want to reuse the tape volser for Nearline (non-VTCS) usage you do not use VOLPARM/POOLPARM, you need to do one of the following:

- a. Issue an HSC `EJECT` command to remove the MVCs from the ACS.
- b. Change the external bar code label on the cartridge.
You must change the external bar code label, because the original MVC volsers are retained in the CDS, and these volsers are only available for use as MVCs.
- c. ENTER the cartridges back into the ACS.

OR

- a. Create a new set of CDS data sets.
- b. Run the HSC `MERGECDs` utility specifying `DELvirt` to remove unwanted MVC ranges.

Note – All HSCs must be stopped when using this option as new CDS data sets will be created.

? Temporarily Removing MVCs

To temporarily remove MVCs from the pool:

1. Enter MVCDRAIN Eject for the MVC.

For example, to run the MVCDRAIN to drain the MVCs in Storage Class STORCL1, virtually eject the MVCs, and return after the request is submitted, enter the following:

```
MVCDRAIN STORCLAS (STORCL1) EJECT NOWAIT
```

This does the following:

- ? Recalls all VTVs on the MVC and remigrates them to new MVCs.
- ? Makes the MVC non-selectable for VTCS migrates.

2. To return the MVC to the MVC pool, enter an MVCDRAIN for the MVC.

Entering MVCDRAIN without the EJECT parameter for the MVC makes it available again.

For example, to run the MVCDRAIN to drain the MVCs in Storage Class STORCL1 and return after the request is submitted, enter the following:

```
MVCDRAIN STORCLAS(STORCL1) NOWAIT
```

Note – As an alternative, you can use MVCMAINT to mark an MVC as read-only. This prevents VTCS from selecting the MVC for migrates but does not remove the VTVs from the MVC. You can also use MVCMAINT to turn off read-only.

If using VOLPARM/POOLPARM definitions, the NOMIGRAT option can be specified on the POOLPARM statement to prevent MVCs from being used for new migrations.

Draining MVCs

Use `MVCDRain` to “drain” an MVC (recall all VTVs on the MVC). You typically drain an MVC for the following reasons:

- ? An MVC report or Display shows data check errors for the MVC. VSM will not migrate to the MVC and you should remove it from the MVC pool.
- ? An MVC report or Display shows errors other than data check errors for the MVC.
- ? A Storage Class or Named MVC Pool is no longer in use and you want to remove or reuse the associated MVCs.

To select the MVCs to drain, you can specify one of the following parameters:

- ? `MVCid` to drain one or more MVCs by volser.
- ? `MVCPool` to drain the MVCs in a Named MVC Pool. See *ELS Command, Control Statement, and Utility Reference* for more information on Named MVC Pools.
- ? `STORCLAS` to drain the MVCs in a Storage Class. See *ELS Command, Control Statement, and Utility Reference* for more information on Storage Classes.

You can use the `MVCDRain` to override the `CONFIG RECLAIM CONMVC` setting. You can run the `MVCDRain` from each host, which starts drain tasks on that host equal to the `CONMVC` value. These drain tasks can run concurrently with drain tasks initiated by other hosts.

Changing MVC Attributes with MVCMAINT

MVCMAINT is a similarly handy tool in VSM Land, and we'll describe its abilities by looking at its parameters:

- ? First, MVC volser (range, list, individual volser) or MANIFEST are your two MVC selection criteria. MVC volser makes sense, but why manifest? Well, you create a manifest file (list of MVCs and the VTVs they contain) when you run EXPORT...which is something you might want to do when you're moving MVCs from one system to another. When you import the MVCs into the new system, it'd probably be a good idea if they started their new lives in read-only mode, so they don't get overwritten until you can define them properly.
- ? READONLY (ON or OFF). See the previous bullet. Also, remember the discussion about adding MVCs to the pool? You might want to enter them into the ACS in scratch status...but some shops bring everything in as non-scratch and then sort things out. When you need to make writeable the new MVCs, MVCMAINT READONLY(OFF) is the tool.
- ? LOST (ON or OFF). How does an MVC get lost? For example, can MVCs get lost? Believe it or not, they can. For example, if a VTCS-initiated mount of an MVC fails to complete (as opposed to completes with an error), VTCS marks the MVC as "lost" in the CDS, and depreferences it.

Multiplexed VTVs that reside on a "lost" MVC are recalled from an alternate MVC. VTCS does not attempt to use "lost" MVCs for migration unless there are no other valid MVCs. When an MVC in "lost" status is successfully mounted, the "lost" status is removed from the MVC record.

Okay, what if you know the MVC isn't *really* lost? Answer: You can use MVCMAINT to turn off the LOST status.

There is an interesting use of MVCMAINT that deserves a mention. What if you have an LSM that's temporarily in manual mode? You might want to (temporarily) depreference MVC selection in that LSM...which you can do with LOST(ON). Then, when the LSM is back in automatic mode, reverse the process with LOST(OFF).

- ? ERROR (ON or OFF). An MVC can (erroneously) go into Error status for several reasons, for example:
 - ? VTCS does not recognize the volume mounted on the RTD as an MVC. This can be caused by some MVS job overwriting the MVC. Determine what happened to the MVC. If it no longer contains valid VTV data, reinitialize the volume and return it to the MVC pool.
 - ? The MVC is not writeable, which can be caused by the thumb wheel being set to read-only, or by the security package not allowing VTCS to write to the volume. Reset the thumb wheel, or change the rules in the security package to allow the MVC to be written to.
 - ? A bad block ID has been detected, and you have to (VTCS) audit the MVC to try to correct the condition.

After you correct the error condition as described, use MVCMAINT to reset the MVC status to ERROR(OFF).

- ? EJECT (ON or OFF) specifies the "logical eject" status of the MVC. How does this status get set, and why might you want to change it? If you explicitly drain an MVC using MVC DRAIN, it's probably because you think the media is bad, and so you depreference it by setting on the "logical eject" status. You then really eject the MVC, run some tests, find out it's just fine, and reenter it. At that point, use MVCMAINT to set EJECT(OFF).
- ? Next, you have a group of MVC attributes specific to T9840/T9940 media, all with ON/OFF switches:

- ⌘ WARRANTY. VTCS also detects media warranty expiration and sets the WARRANTY status to ON. Alternatively, you can use SMF, LOGREC data, or your MVC and VTV reports to detect MVCs approaching end-of-life and use the MVCMAINT to manually set WARRANTY ON. Knowing that the warranty has expired lets you plan for media replacement before media end-of-life occurs...see next bullet. What if you know an MVC was erroneously marked as warranty expired? Answer: Just use MVCMAINT to reset the warranty expired status.
- ⌘ RETIRED. VTCS also automatically detects media end-of-life and sets the RETIRED status to ON. As above, you can use SMF, LOGREC data, or your MVC and VTV reports to detect MVCs approaching end-of-life and use the MVCMAINT to manually set RETIRED ON...or reset the status to RETIRED OFF for MVCs erroneously marked as retired
- ⌘ VTCS automatically detects an invalid Media Information Region (MIR) and sets the INVLDMIR status to ON. You can recover the MIR by using either the utility available through the operator panel for the transport or by using the utility available through MPST. After you recreate the MIR, you can use the MVCMAINT to set INVLDMIR OFF for the MVC.

Note – Running MVCMAINT also produces an MVC report of the volumes affected by the MVCMAINT job.

Working with VTSSs

The main thing you can do, as needed, with VTSSs is use the VTCS Vary VTSS command/utility to vary a VTSS online, offline, or to quiesced state. It probably goes without saying, but we'll say it anyway: Always know what you're doing, and why, when you vary a VTSS offline or to quiesced state. The why is probably that the VTSS needs maintenance or you're going to remove it from the configuration, which we'll talk about in [“Finding and Fixing VTCS Problems” on page 137](#).

First, however, we'll provide you with a handy chart that shows what happens when you vary a VTSS into each of its supported modes (and why you should use QUIESCED over OFFline, if at all possible).

TABLE 5-1 VTSS States

If you specify the following Vary VTSS parameter...	The VTSS first goes to state...	And then goes to state...
ONline	Online Pending - In online pending state, the online process has started but has not completed on all hosts.	Online - In online state, the VTSS is online, available, and accepts both front-end and back-end work. If the VTSS was offline, when it goes online, VTCS issues a warning message recommending a VTSS audit.
QUIESCED	Quiescing - In quiescing state, VTCS does not direct any DD allocation to the VTSS, which still accepts pending mounts to allow those long running jobs with unit=aff chains to complete. When all VTDs are no longer in use (their UCBs are not allocated on MVS), the VTSS goes to quiesced state. In quiescing state, the VTSS continues to accept and process back-end work; for example, migrates, recalls, and audits.	Quiesced - In quiesced state, the VTSS continues to accept and process back-end work; for example, migrates, recalls, and audits. That is, you can use the recall and migrate commands and utilities to do these operations using the quiesced VTSS.
OFFline	Offline Pending - In offline pending state, the offline process has started but has not completed on all hosts. VTCS immediately shuts down the VTSS and interrupts and purges all active tasks and purges all queued tasks. The VTSS server task terminates and no longer accepts new front-end and back-end work. VTCS creates new VTVs and mounts/dismounts existing VTVs only on alternate VTSSs, if they are available.	Offline - In offline state, The VTSS is offline to all hosts and does not accept either front-end or back-end work. If a copy of a VTV is resident on an offline VTSS and also on an MVC and a job requires the VTV, VTCS automatically recalls the VTV to an alternate VTSS, if available.

Note – In a client/server environment (MVS/CSC and LibraryStation or SMC/HTTP server on client hosts), VTCS cannot determine if long running jobs are active on client hosts. After a VTSS goes to offline state, therefore, you should still either (a) explicitly vary its VTDs off line to MVS or (b) ensure that virtual tape activity on the client host has ceased.

In Clustered VTSS or Cross-TapePlex Replication (CTR) configurations, the Clinks to the VTSS should be varied offline to stop replication and electronic export processing.

? Removing a VTSS

Here's the scenario for removing a VTSS: You have two separate VSM systems, the workload for one grows while the workload diminishes for the other. Solution: take a VTSS out of System A and give it to System B. The "how to add a VTSS" is covered in *Installing ELS*, so we'll confine this section to what you do to remove a VTSS.

? To remove a VTSS

1. Before you remove the VTSS, do the following:

- ? You do not need to empty a VTSS prior to deletion. What you **do** need to ensure is that all VTVs are fully migrated. Also consider changing other parameters, for example, TAPEREQ statements so that new work is not routed to the removed VTSS.
- ? If removing all of one device type/ACS combination from a VTSS, also ensure that all VTVs are fully migrated first. As above, consider changing other parameters to reflect the changed migration capabilities of the VTSS (for example, Management Classes, which point to Storage Classes that specify ACS and media).

2. Vary the VTSS to Quiesced state.

After it goes offline, continue with [Step 3](#).

3. Remove the VTSS, then rerun CONFIG to logically remove it.

[FIGURE 5-1](#) shows example JCL to run CONFIG to update the configuration to deny host access to VTSS2 that you physically removed from your configuration. In this example, you respecify the VTSS statement for VTSS2 with no parameters to deny host access to this VTSS.

```
//UPDATECFGEXEC PGM=SLUADMIN, PARM='MIXED'  
//STEPLIB DD DSN=hlq.SEALINK, DISP=SHR  
//SLSCNTL DD DSN=FEDB.VSMLMULT.DBASEPRM, DISP=SHR  
//SLSCNTL2 DD DSN=FEDB.VSMLMULT.DBASESEC, DISP=SHR  
//SLSSTBY DD DSN=FEDB.VSMLMULT.DBASETBY, DISP=SHR  
//SLSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*  
//SLSIN DD *  
CONFIG  
GLOBAL MAXVTV=32000MVCFREE=40  
RECLAIM THRESHLD=70MAXMVC=40 START=35  
VTSS NAME=VTSS1 LOW=70 HIGH=80 MAXMIG=3 RETAIN=5  
RTD NAME=VTS18800 DEVNO=8800 CHANIF=0A  
RTD NAME=VTS18801 DEVNO=8801 CHANIF=0I  
RTD NAME=VTS18802 DEVNO=8802 CHANIF=1A  
RTD NAME=VTS18803 DEVNO=8803 CHANIF=1I  
RTD NAME=VTS18811 DEVNO=8811 CHANIF=0E  
RTD NAME=VTS18813 DEVNO=8813 CHANIF=1E  
VTD LOW=8900 HIGH=893F  
VTSS NAME=VTSS2
```

FIGURE 5-1 CONFIG example: updating configuration to deny host access to a physically removed VTSS

Working with VTVs

This section consists of the most likely tasks you might have to do on an as-needed basis: deleting scratch VTVs and changing VTV attributes.

Deleting Scratch VTVs

There are two ways you can delete scratch VTVs:

- ? Via policy, by specifying DELSCR(YES) on a VTV's Management Class and using HSC or LCM scratch synchronization to do the actual scratch.
- ? *Ad hoc*, using the DELETSCR utility. DELETSCR deletes scratch VTVs from VTSSs and unlinks any migrated VTVs from MVCs. Deleted VTVs are marked as non-initialized, although versioning information is retained.

We're going to leave the policy discussion of deleting scratch VTVs to *Installing ELS* and stick to the *ad hoc* version. After all, *ad hoc* is basically "as needed" in Latin, and that's the theme of this book.

Before we tell you how to do it, let's dispense with the obligatory warning, which is:

Caution – When you use DELETSCR to delete scratch VTVs, any data on those VTVs is **gone** and cannot be recovered!

Okay, so deleting VTVs is **not** something you do because you have nothing else to do. If you have to manually delete scratch VTVs, it's because...you guessed it...you're in trouble to the tune of the scenario [on page 81](#).

To prevent inadvertent VTV deletion via operator command, DELETSCR is a SLUADMIN utility only, and has the following capabilities:

- ? You can specify VTVs by volser (individual volser, list, or range), Management Class, or HSC Scratch Pool. Using your MVC and VTV reports, you should already have a good idea of the best way to identify the candidates and apply the corresponding DELETSCR option. You can only specify one option (VTVID, MGMTCLAS, or SCRPOOL) and if you don't specify anything, DELETSCR deletes **all** eligible VTVs...which may be what you want, but think before you go for that method.
- ? The mandatory NOTREF parameter specifies the days since a VTV was referenced (1-999). NOTREF is effectively a grace period; any VTV referenced within the specified grace period **is not** deleted.
- ? There is a handy (optional) MAXVTV parameter that specifies the maximum number of VTVs that DELETSCR deletes. Note that this is a **maximum**, not a target. If you're running DELETSCR proactively during a non-peak period, you might not care about MAXVTV. If you're in trouble, you most certainly will.

Note that the range for MAXVTV is 0-999. What happens if you specify 0? In this case, DELETSCR does not delete any VTVs, but the **summary** report shows **how many** VTVs would have been deleted...at the point at which you ran DELETSCR (that is, the report is just a snapshot).

- ? Finally, you can see the results of your work via the DELETSCR reports...standard or detailed (via the DETAIL parameter).

DELETSCR JCL Example

FIGURE 5-2 shows example JCL to run the DELETSCR to delete scratch VTVs in Management Class MC1 not referenced within 60 days up to a maximum of 800 VTVs and produce a detailed report.

```
//DELETSCR EXEC PGM=SLUADMIN, PARM='MIXED'  
//STEPLIB DD DSN=hlq.SEALINK, DISP=SHR  
//SLSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*  
//SLSIN DD *  
    DELETSCR MGMTCLAS(MC1) NOTREF(60) MAXVTV(800) DET
```

FIGURE 5-2 DELETSCR utility example

Changing VTV Attributes with VTMMAINT

VTMMAINT is another handy tool, this time for VTV maintenance, which does the following:

- ? Selects VTVs by volser (range, list, individual volser...your choice).
- ? “Unlinks VTVs from MVCs”...which I would want to do, because? Answer: It’s likely you’re going to want to do this if you change a VTV’s Management Class as described in [“Changing VTV Management Class and Unlinking VTVs from MVCs” on page 107](#).
- ? Change the VTV’s Management Class, which you do when you want the VTV to be managed differently. There are other ways to do this, but the best tool is clearly VTMMAINT, as described in [“Changing VTV Management Class and Unlinking VTVs from MVCs” on page 107](#).
- ? Logically dismounts specified VTVs in an offline VTSS. This is best explained in [“Logically Dismounting VTVs in an Offline VTSS” on page 108](#).
- ? [“Managing VTVs Replicated via Cross-TapePlex Replication \(CTR\)” on page 109](#).

Note – And don’t forget...running VTMMAINT also produces a VTV report of the volumes affected by the VTMMAINT job.

? Changing VTV Management Class and Unlinking VTVs from MVCs

You can use VTMMAINT to change a VTV’s Management Class. If the new Management Class specifies a different Storage Class, the VTV’s current location on MVCs is incorrect. The following procedure tells how to use VTMMAINT to change a VTV’s Management Class and Storage Class.

To change a VTV’s Management Class and unlink it:

1. Recall the VTV.

The VTV must be VTSS-resident for the unlink to succeed in [Step 2](#).

2. Use VTMMAINT ULINKMVC to unlink the VTV from the MVC(s) where it is located.

3. Use VTMMAINT MGMTclas to assign a new management class.

4. Remigrate the VTV to place it on the correct MVCs...

...or, see [“Changing VTV Storage Class with RECONcil” on page 110](#) for procedures for moving VTVs to MVCs *ad hoc*.

? Logically Dismounting VTVs in an Offline VTSS

If a VTV is mounted when a VTSS goes offline and a copy of the VTV exists on an MVC, VTCS will not recall the migrated VTV to an alternate VTSS because the VTV is in mounted status on the offline VTSS. In this situation, you can use the VTVMAINT to logically dismount VTVs in the offline VTSS (turn off the “mounted” bit in the CDS), then recall the VTV to an alternate VTSS. VTCS records each successful VTV dismount in the SMF14STA field of the SMF Subtype 14 record. The VTVRPT (UNAVAIL) option reports the status of unavailable VTVs in an offline VTSS. For more information, see *ELS Command, Control Statement, and Utility Reference*.

Don’t dismount an unavailable VTV in an offline VTSS unless you are absolutely sure that the MVC copies, if any, of the VTV, are identical in content to the unavailable VTV! Otherwise, you risk recalling a VTV with back-level data to an alternate VTSS! For example, a VTV mounted for read is probably safe to dismount for recall to an alternate VTSS. A VTV mounted for write, however, is probably not safe to dismount because it has probably been updated and the MVC copies are therefore back-level.

The following procedure provides the general steps you use to logically dismount a VTV and access that VTV from a different VTSS.

To logically dismount a VTV and access that VTV from a different VTSS:

1. Vary the VTSS offline to VTCS with the following command:

```
VT VARY VTSS (name) OFFLINE
```

If I/O was active and the VTSS failed, MVS should box the VTDs and dismount any mounted VTVs *from the MVS perspective*. However, if communication with the VTSS failed before the VTSS actually dismounted any mounted VTVs, they may still be online to VTCS. Therefore, you first need to vary the VTSS offline to VTCS.

If MVS boxed the VTDs and dismounted any mounted VTVs, go to [Step 3](#). Otherwise, continue with [Step 2](#).

2. Dismount the VTV (MVS perspective).

You cannot remount the VTV on a VTD in another VTSS if MVS still considers it mounted in the offline VTSS. Do either of the following:

- ? Use the MVS UNLOAD command to dismount the VTV.
- ? Use the VARY OFFLINE to vary offline the VTD where the VTV is mounted, which will also dismount the VTV.

3. Run VTVMAINT, specifying the offline VTSS and VTV(s) you want to logically dismount.

For example, to logically dismount VTVs VV6823, VV6825, and VV6688 in offline VTSS01, code the following SLSIN DD statement in your JCL:

```
VTVMAINT DISMOUNT VTV(VV6823,VV6825,VV6688) VTSS(VTSS01)
```

If migrated copies of the dismounted VTVs exist that an online VTSS can access, you can now use this VTSS to access the VTVs.

Caution – If the VTV copy mounted in the offline VTSS was modified and not migrated, the MVC copy that you recall to an alternate VTSS is not current! Therefore, StorageTek strongly recommends that you do not recall these non-current MVC copies!

Tip – When the offline VTSS is ready to be brought back online, StorageTek **strongly recommends** that you audit the VTSS before running production jobs that use the VTSS. Also ensure that you clear any boxed VTD conditions before issuing the VTSS VARY ONLINE command.

Managing VTVs Replicated via Cross-TapePlex Replication (CTR)

You can use VTVM`MAINT` to change the status of VTVs replicated via CTR as follows:

- ? Use VTVM`MAINT` `OWNRPLEX` to change the VTV's owning TapePlex.
- ? Use VTVM`MAINT` `DELEXpot` to remove the name of a TapePlex that references a VTV.
- ? Use VTVM`MAINT` `ADDEXpot` to add the name of a TapePlex that references a VTV.

For more information, see *ELS Disaster Recovery and Offsite Data Management Guide*.

Changing VTV Storage Class with RECONcil

As described in “[Changing VTV Management Class and Unlinking VTVs from MVCs](#)” on [page 107](#), you can use VTMVAINT to change a VTV’s Management Class...which could, of course, change its Storage Class. Or what if you want to **explicitly** move the VTV from one Storage Class to another? Answer: use RECONcil.

Before we fire off our first RECONcil job (SLUADMIN utility only), let’s figure out *why* we want to change a VTV’s Storage Class. There are basically three reasons:

- ? As above, you’re explicitly changing the VTV’s Management Class/Storage Class.
- ? The VTVs are on the wrong media, in the wrong ACS, or both.
- ? An ACS is unavailable for a considerable period of time, then is brought back online. In this case, you would first change the MIGpol parameter on the MGMTclas statement for the affected VTVs to point to a different ACS (and media, if desired). When the original ACS comes back online, you then change the MIGpol parameter on the MGMTclas statement to point to the original ACS, and run RECONcil specifying the updated MGMTclas (or STORclas) statement(s) to move the VTVs to the original ACS.

Notice that we’re talking about using RECONcil to, um, reconcile a VTV’s *incorrect* Storage Class (incorrect MVC media, ACS location, or both). What if you wanted to move VTVs whose data is now less frequently accessed from access-centric media (such as T9840 cartridges) to storage-centric media (such as T9940 cartridges) and an Extended Store ACS or offsite? In that case, you typically set up an Archive Policy via the ARCHAge/ARCHPol parameters of the MGMTCLAS statement, and the VTV movement then occurs automatically according to the ARCHPol specification when the ARCHAge value is exceeded...*and when the VTV is recalled and remigrated.*

An automatic Archive Policy, therefore, is like an automatic migration. Both happen over time, and time is what you **don’t** have if one or more VTVs are truly in the wrong place. In this case, use RECONcil.

? Running a RECONcil Job

To change VTV ACS/media with RECONcil:

1. To select the VTVs to validate (i. e., Do they need reconciliation or not?), you can specify one of the following RECONcil parameters:

- ? STORclas - Specifies one or more Storage Classes. Here, RECONcil does the following:
 - ? Looks up the ACS and media definition for the specified Storage Class(es).
 - ? Scans the MVCs *currently in* the Storage Classes. Does the MVC ACS and media match the Storage Class definition? If not, list the MVCs/VTVs in error.
- ? MVC - Specifies a list or range of MVCs. RECONcil does the following:
 - ? Determines the actual ACS and media for the specified MVCs.
 - ? Does the actual MVC ACS/media match the Storage Class definition for the MVC? If not, list the MVCs/VTVs in error.
- ? MGMTclas - Specifies one or more Management Classes. RECONcil does the following:
 - ? Looks up the ACS and media definition as specified on the MGMTclas MIGpol parameter.
 - ? Scans the VTVs *currently in* the specified Management Classes. Is the VTV on an MVC with ACS/media that matches the MGMTclas MIGpol specification? If not, list the VTVs on the MVCs in error.
- ? VTV - list or range of VTVs. RECONcil does the following:
 - ? Determines the Management Class(es) for the specified VTVs.
 - ? Looks up the ACS and media definition as specified on the MGMTclas MIGpol parameter.
 - ? Scans the VTVs *currently in* the specified Management Classes. Is the VTV on an MVC with ACS/media that matches the MGMTclas MIGpol specification? If not, list the VTVs on the MVCs in error.

Note – And, as you can imagine...if you do not specify **any** of the selection parameters, VTCS validates **all** VTVs...and we'll talk more about that in [Step 2](#).

2. Accept the default when you first run RECONcil...

...which is to generate a report only, which, as you can imagine, does no data movement, but merely reports the VTVs that are candidates for reconciliation. You can guess the reason for this, but we'll explicitly state it anyway.

Caution – Because reconciling VTVs can be resource intensive, StorageTek **strongly recommends** that you run RECONcil *without* MOVEVTV first, then adjust the job as needed *before* specifying MOVEVTV!

3. If needed, adjust the RECONcil job...

Okay, let's say you ran the report per [Step 2](#), and it looks like you'll be reconciling for a long time. Well, consider doing the following:

- ⌚ Run RECONcil during non-peak processing periods, just as you would a demand MVC space reclamation.
- ⌚ Use the RECONcil utility parameters to override the CONFIG RECLAIM THRESHLD, MAXMVC, and CONMVC settings to optimize reconcile performance.
- ⌚ Specify the maximum time for the reconcile in minutes on the ELAPSE parameter.

Note – There are **multiple** limiting factors that influence reconciliations (for example, MAXMVC and ELAPSE). VTCS enforces the **strictest** limiting factor. For example, if you run RECONcil and specify ELAPSE equal to 5 hours and MAXMVC equal to 10 *and* VTCS reconciles 10 MVCs in one hour, then VTCS terminates the reconciliations before the ELAPSE value expires.

- ⌚ There is also a RECONcil POLICYdd option that is also available on the ARCHive utility and can be a useful diagnostic. POLICYdd, which enforces producing only a report, points to a file that contains an alternate set of MGMTclas statements.

Tip – This is basically a **valuable** “what if” tool that says “Let's say I changed some VTV Management Classes per [“Changing VTV Management Class and Unlinking VTVs from MVCs” on page 107](#) (including their Storage Class specifications) and then ran RECONcil? What would *that* look like?” Well, now you can find out **before** you actually change a VTV's Management Class...

Note – VTCS and HSC must be active to process a RECONcil request **except** when you specify the POLICYdd parameter.

4. Okay, you've done all the "what ifs," fine tuning, and off-peak schedule required...

...now it's time to make it happen. [FIGURE 5-3](#) shows example JCL to run RECONcil as follows:

- ? Reconcile VTVs in Management Classes LOCALPROD1 and LOCALPROD2.
- ? Set MAXMVC to 60, CONMVC to 8, and ELAPSE to 60 for the RECONcil job.

```
//RECONCIL EXEC PGM=SLUADMIN
//STEPLIB DD DSN=h1q.SEALINK,DISP=SHR
//SLSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//SLSIN DD *
      RECON MGMT (LOCALPROD1,LOCALPROD2) MAXMVC(60) CONMVC(8)
      ELAPSE(360) MOVEVTV
```

FIGURE 5-3 Example JCL for the RECONcil utility

And, of course, you get an after-action RECONcil report that tells you how smoothly (or not) things went so you can readjust and rerun the process if necessary...

Using FOR_LOSTMVC to Recover VTVs

You can use the `LOGUTIL FOR_LOSTMVC` statement to recover VTVs that resided on lost or damaged MVCs. How does the `LOGUTIL FOR_LOSTMVC` statement work and how do you use it most effectively? Well, as follows...

The `FOR_LOSTMVC` utility scans the CDS and the log file structure (if necessary) to identify all VTVs on the lost or damaged MVCs whose volsers you specify and to determine the recovery method from an alternate VTV copy as described in [TABLE 5-2 on page 115](#). `LOGUTIL FOR_LOSTMVC` generates a report showing all VTVs that existed on the lost or damaged MVCs and how they will be recovered, plus summary information for each lost or damaged MVC.

TABLE 5-2 Alternate VTV Copy and Recovery Process

Alternate VTV Copy Category	Recovery Process
Category 1: Currently VTSS resident.	Recovery is from the resident copy. If you requested recovery commands, <code>VTVMaint</code> <code>ULINKMVC</code> commands are generated to unlink the VTV from the lost or damaged MVCs.
Category 2: Currently linked to one or more alternate MVC copies.	Recovery is from the best alternate MVC based on four factors: ? Does an MVC record exist in the CDS for the MVC? ? Is the MVC in lost status? ? Is the MVC in broken status? ? Has a data check occurred on the MVC? If you requested recovery commands, <code>VTVMaint</code> <code>ULINKMVC</code> and <code>RECALL</code> commands are generated to unlink the VTV from the lost or damaged MVCs and then recall the MVC.
Category 3: Has been Cross TapePlex Replicated.	The first remote TapePlex encountered that contains a copy of the VTV is used to recover the VTV. If you requested recovery commands, <code>EEXPORT</code> <code>ULINKMVC</code> commands are generated. These commands must be run from the remote TapePlex where the VTV currently resides. Comments in the <code>COMMANDS</code> data set show the TapePlex where these commands must be run. The command unlinks the VTV from the lost or damaged MVCs and then Cross TapePlex Replicates the VTV back to the local TapePlex.
Category 4: Was previously linked to one or more MVC copies that may still contain the VTV data.	One of the previously linked MVCs is selected as the recovery MVC. These MVC copies were found in the log files and may still contain a copy of the VTV. You must audit the selected recovery MVC. The best previously linked MVC copy to do the recovery from is selected based on the same factors as alternate MVCs. If you requested recovery commands, <code>AUDIT</code> commands are generated to audit the MVC and to attempt to link it to the VTV. <code>MVCMAINT READONLY (ON)</code> commands are generated for <code>AUDIT</code> MVCs.
Category 5: Is unrecoverable.	Unrecoverable, copies only existed on the lost or damaged MVCs.
Note: If you requested recovery commands, <code>MVCMAINT</code> commands are also generated for Categories 1, 2, and 3, and 4. These statements mark the lost or damaged MVCs as <code>readonly</code> and <code>broken</code> so that they are no longer selected for recalls or migrates.	

FOR_LOSTMVC Recovery Procedure

Note – In this procedure, the JCL examples do not show DD statements for the CDS copies, which is valid if HSC is active and you want to use the active CDS on the system where you are running LOGUTIL. Otherwise, you must specify the DD statements for the CDS copies.

To recover VTVs using FOR_LOSTMVC:

1. **First, run the LOGUTIL FOR_LOSTMVC command with only the volsers of the lost or damaged MVCs.**

For example, the following example shows:

? The logging data set is LOGIN.

Note – You can run LOGUTIL FOR_LOSTMVC with a dummy LOGDD specified to allow recovery on systems where CDS Logging has not been activated. The recovery is limited to the data in the CDS but may still be useful if all VTVs are either resident, on an alternate MVC copy or exported via Cross Tape Replication.

? The volser of the damaged MVC is DMV509.

? The recovery commands are logged in data set REVCMD.

```
//JOBLOGR job (account), programmer, REGION=1024k
//S1 EXEC PGM=SLUADMIN, PARM=MIXED
//STEPLIB DD DSN=hlq.SEALINK, DISP=SHR
//LOGIN DD DSN=FEED.VSMLMULT.LOGFILE.OFFLOAD(-2), DISP=OLD
// DD DSN=FEED.VSMLMULT.LOGFILE.OFFLOAD(-1), DISP=OLD
// DD DSN=FEED.VSMLMULT.LOGFILE.OFFLOAD(0), DISP=OLD
//REVCMD DD DSN=FEED.VSMLMULT.REVCMD, DISP=(CATLG,DELETE),
// UNIT=SYSDA, SPACE=(CYL,(1,1),RLSE),
// DCB=(RECFM=FB,LRECL=80,BLKSIZE=27920)
//SLSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//SLSIN DD *
LOGUTIL LOGDD (LOGIN)
FOR_LOSTMVC MVC (DMV509) COMMANDS (REVCMD)
```

2. Review the LOGUTIL FOR_LOSTMVC report from [Step 1](#).

Select the VTVs you want to recover and rerun LOGUTIL FOR_LOSTMVC, specifying the VTVs you want to recover from the lost or damaged MVC. For example:

```
//JOBLOGR job (account),programmer,REGION=1024k
//S1 EXEC PGM=SLUADMIN,PARM=MIXED
//STEPLIB DD DSN=hlq.SEALINK,DISP=SHR
//LOGIN DD DSN=FEEDB.VSMLMULT.LOGFILE.OFFLOAD(-2),DISP=OLD
// DD DSN=FEEDB.VSMLMULT.LOGFILE.OFFLOAD(-1),DISP=OLD
// DD DSN=FEEDB.VSMLMULT.LOGFILE.OFFLOAD(0),DISP=OLD
//REVCMD DD DSN=FEEDB.VSMLMULT.REVCMD,DISP=(CATLG,DELETE),
// UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(CYL,(1,1),RLSE),
// DCB=(RECFM=FB,LRECL=80,BLKSIZE=27920)
//SLSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//SLSIN DD *
LOGUTIL LOGDD(LOGIN)
FOR_LOSTMVC MVC(DMV509) VTV(DX009) COMMANDS(REVCMD)
```

Note – If you specify a VTV that was not on the lost or damaged MVC, this VTV is ignored.

If you want to recover all specified VTVs on the damaged MVC, continue with [Step 3](#).

3. To recover the specified VTV(s), run the commands in the recovery data set specified in [Step 2](#).

Note –

- ? The commands in the recovery data set should be run (using standard SLUADMIN JCL) as soon as possible after running FOR_LOSTMVC to ensure their accuracy.
 - ? StorageTek recommends that you run the recovery commands in the COMMANDS file in the following order:
 1. All EEXPORT ULINKMVC commands.
 2. All MVCMAINT READONLY (ON) commands.
 3. All AUDIT commands.
 4. If there were EEXPORT ULINKMVC or AUDIT commands, then re-run FOR_LOSTMVC. With the new run, there should be no EEXPORT or AUDIT commands in the newly generated COMMANDS file. If there are, then return to [Step 1](#).
 5. All MVCMAINT READONLY (ON) ERROR (ON) commands.
 6. All ULINKMVC commands.
 7. All RECALL commands.
 8. The RECONcil utility
 - ? MVCMAINT commands are generated for all specified lost or damaged MVCs that exist in the CDS and that have at least one qualifying VTV on them. The MVCMAINT commands will set the readonly and error/broken bits on for the lost or damaged MVCs to prevent them from being allocated for recalls or migrates. A maximum of approximately 3000 MVCs is included on each MVCMAINT command.
-

4. Run the RECONcil utility to ensure the correct number of MVC copies are created for each VTV.

For example:

```
//JOBLOGR job (account),programmer,REGION=1024k
//S1 EXEC PGM=SLUADMIN,PARM=MIXED
//STEPLIB DD DSN=hlq.SEALINK,DISP=SHR
//LOGIN DD DSN=FEED.VSMLMULT.LOGFILE.OFFLOAD(-2),DISP=OLD
// DD DSN=FEED.VSMLMULT.LOGFILE.OFFLOAD(-1),DISP=OLD
// DD DSN=FEED.VSMLMULT.LOGFILE.OFFLOAD(0),DISP=OLD
//REVCMD DD DSN=FEED.VSMLMULT.REVCMD,DISP=(CATLG,DELETE),
// UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(CYL,(1,1),RLSE),
// DCB=(RECFM=FB,LRECL=80,BLKSIZE=27920)
//SLSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//SLSIN DD *
RECONCIL VTV(DX009)
```

Leading Edge Solutions with Management and Storage Classes

VTCS CDS Levels

A critical item re leading edge solutions is “know your CDS VTCS level, and what it can and cannot do.” [TABLE 6-1](#) describes the CDS levels and the features they enable.

TABLE 6-1 CDS Levels for Supported VTCS Versions

This VTCS CDS Level...	...is valid for these VTCS/NCS versions...	...and this VTSS hardware...	...and provides these enhancements
E	6.0, 6.1, 6.2, 7.0	VSM2 and VSM3 VSM4/VSM5 with up to 256 VTDs per VTSS and/or up to 16 RTDs per VTSS. RTD sharing except for paired RTDs (a paired RTD shares a CIP with another Nearlink connection, either an RTD or a CLINK).	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ? 4 MVC copies ? 800 Mb VTVs
F	6.1, 6.2, 7.0.7.1		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ? Near Continuous Operations (NCO) ? Bi-directional clustering ? Improved CDS I/O performances - reduces the I/O required to manage virtual scratch sub-pools
G	6.2, 7.0.7.1		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ? 400Mb/800Mb/2Gb/4Gb VTVs ? Standard/Large VTV Pages ? 65000 VTVs per MVC
H	7.1		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ? Dynamic Reclaim ? Autonomous Device Support

What are Management and Storage Classes?

VTCS Management and Storage Classes, which are the building blocks of a lot of leading edge implementations, do the following:

- ? VTCS Management Classes specify *how* VTCS manages VTVs. The HSC MGMTclas control statement defines a Management Class and its attributes. For example, the DELSCR parameter of the MGMTclas statement specifies whether VTCS deletes scratched VTVs from the VTSS. Management Classes can also point to...
- ? ...VTCS Storage Classes, which specify *where* migrated VTVs reside. The HSC STORclas control statement defines a Storage Class and its attributes. For example:

```
MGMT NAME (PAYROLL) MIGPOL (LOCAC, REMAC)
STORCLAS NAME (LOCAC) ACS (00) MEDIA (STK1R)
STORCLAS NAME (REMAC) ACS (01) MEDIA (STK2P, ZCART)
```

This combination of Management and Storage Classes says “For Management Class PAYROLL, migrate duplexed to separate MVCs in the local and remote ACSs. In the local ACS, put it on 9840 media so I can get it back in a hurry if I need it. In the remote ACS, prefer 9940 over ZCART media, but *definitely* put it in Deep Storage there.”

Let’s start with “[Creating and Using VTCS Management and Storage Classes: The Basics](#)” on [page 122](#), which is a basic procedure you can adjust for any of your business’s needs. Next, it’s on to “[Leading Edge Techniques You Can Do with Management and Storage Classes](#)” on [page 124](#). Think of this section as a gallery where you get to see a variety of options, then pick out the one that works best for you...

Creating and Using VTCS Management and Storage Classes: The Basics

You'll see this pattern a lot (TAPEREQ --> POLICY --> MGMTclas --> STORclas), so get to know it, because it's the foundation for all the information in [“Leading Edge Techniques You Can Do with Management and Storage Classes”](#) on page 124.

? To create and use VSM Management and Storage Classes:

1. **Determine the definition data set that contains the STORclas and MGMTclas statements.**

MGMTclas and STORclas statements **must** reside in the same data set for cross-validation.

2. **Define Storage Classes via the STORclas control statement.**

3. **As desired, adjust the migration policies with MIGRSEL and MIGRVTV statements.**

4. **Define Management Classes with the MGMTclas control statement.**

Note that the MGMTclas control statement specifies Storage Classes on various parameters.

5. **Load the control statements with the HSC MGMTDEF command.**

6. **Specify a tape policy on the SMC POLICY command.**

7. **Specify the Policy name to VTCS on either of the following:**

- ? The SMC TAPEREQ statement.
- ? SMS routines that you write to the StorageTek DFSMS interface.

Maintaining Management and Storage Classes

Note the following:

- ? Always use an SMC POLICY command to assign the Management Class to mounts.
- ? You can specify a policy with either the TAPEREQ statement or SMS routines.
- ? Use POLICY VALIDATE to ensure that your SMC POLICY statements all reference VALID MGMTCLAS names.
- ? You can use the VTVMAINT utility to change a VTV's Management Class. Also note that while you **cannot** use VTVMAINT to directly change a VTV's Storage Class, you **can** use VTVMAINT to change a VTV's Management Class, which can reference a different Storage Class.
- ? Use only the minimum Storage Classes required to define the policies you want to implement. Excessive Storage Classes can impact VSM performance due to the MVC mount/dismount overhead incurred. In addition, an MVC can only contain VTVs in a single Storage Class, so excessive Storage Classes can underuse MVC space.
- ? **If you decide to delete a Management Class definition**, run a VTV Report to make sure that the Management Class is no longer assigned to any VTVs, otherwise unpredictable results will occur!

Leading Edge Techniques You Can Do with Management and Storage Classes

The following isn't an exhaustive list, just the most common tasks you can do with Management and Storage Classes:

- ? Using the `STORclas MEDIA` Parameter for MVC Media Preferencing. Yes, we give you defaults for MVC media preferencing, but you can adjust them any way you want. For more information, see *Managing HSC and VTCS*.
- ? [“Grouping Multiple Workloads on Shared MVCs” on page 125](#). This was our introductory example, and is a good one if your company owns the data center, and you want to optimize use of your available resources by:
 - ? Duplexing critical data to separate MVCs in the local and remote ACSs. In the local ACS, put it on 9840 media so I can get it back in a hurry if I need it. In the remote ACS, prefer 9940 over ZCART media for deep storage on high-capacity media.
 - ? Giving two critical jobstreams (payroll and accounting) access to these Management/Storage Classes. Result: all your payroll and accounting data is duplexed local and remote, grouped on the same set of MVCs of the appropriate media per the Storage Class specifications.
 - ? Production data is also critical, but we want it on a separate set of MVCs from the ones used for payroll and accounting data. No problem...just create another Management Class/Storage Class combination for production data, and you're done...
- ? [“Segregating Individual Workloads on Separate Sets of MVCs” on page 127](#). All you service groups, study this one carefully, because you'll probably use it a lot. Ever want to give each of your clients his/her own set of resources for billing/security purposes? Segregating workloads is the key...
- ? [“Archiving Data” on page 129](#). In this scenario, you can use VTCS to mimic HSM...in the StorageTek automated tape/virtual tape environment only. That is, you can use the `ARCHAge` and `ARCHPol` parameters of the `MGMTclas` statement to set an *Archive Policy* for VTVs in a Management Class.

Information Lifecycle Management (ILM), a StorageTek storage management strategy, has as its central concept the idea that data should be stored on media that matches its importance to the business enterprise and its pattern of reuse. Active, important data goes on fast-access media, and has multiple copies, while inactive, less important data is archived to high-capacity, cheaper media. Automating this process is the most cost-effective way to manage data storage. Archiving implements ILM by letting you archive inactive data. Using VTCS archiving, you can move VTVs to different media (for example, from fast-access 9840 media to high-capacity 9940 media) and a different location (for example, from a local ACS to a remote ACS for ejection/vaulting). For the details, see [“Archiving Data” on page 129](#)...

- ? [“Reconciling VTV Media and Location” on page 131](#). Think of archiving as a proactive move. You put the data on the right media at the beginning of the ILM cycle, then move it to other media as the data ages. What happens if the data ends up on the wrong media? Answer: use the `RECONcil` utility to move it from one Storage Class to another...
- ? **Controlling VTV Migration**. ELS allows very fine control over VTV migration, including deleting scratch VTVs from the VTSS buffer, specifying the immediate migrate delay interval, and specifying the maximum VTV residency interval. For more information, see *Configuring HSC and VTCS* and *ELS Disaster Recovery and Offsite Data Management Guide*.

Grouping Multiple Workloads on Shared MVCs

You can use Storage and Management Classes to group multiple workloads on a shared set of MVCs. For example, the `STORCLAS` statements in [FIGURE 6-1](#) define Storage Classes `LOC1`, `LOC2`, `REM1`, and `REM2`.

```
STORCLAS NAME (LOC1) ACS (00) MEDIA (STK1R)
STORCLAS NAME (LOC2) ACS (00) MEDIA (STK1R)
STORCLAS NAME (REM1) ACS (01) MEDIA (STK2P, ZCART)
STORCLAS NAME (REM2) ACS (01) MEDIA (STK2P, ZCART)
```

FIGURE 6-1 Storage Classes for Workload Grouping

[FIGURE 6-2](#) defines the following Management Classes:

- Management Classes `PAY` and `ACCOUNT` both specify the `LOC1` and `REM1` Storage Classes on the `MIGPOL` parameter. The VTVs in `PAY` and `ACCOUNT`, therefore, are duplexed and grouped on the MVCs defined by Storage Classes `LOC1` and `REM1`.
- Management Class `PROD` specifies the `LOC2` and `REM2` Storage Classes on the `MIGPOL` parameter. The VTVs in `PROD`, therefore, are duplexed and grouped on the MVCs defined by Storage Classes `LOC2` and `REM2`, which are separate from those for `PAY` and `ACCOUNT`.

```
MGMT NAME (PAY) MIGPOL (LOC1, REM1)
MGMT NAME (ACCOUNT) MIGPOL (LOC1, REM1)
MGMT NAME (PROD) MIGPOL (LOC2, REM2)
```

FIGURE 6-2 Management Classes for Workload Grouping

[FIGURE 6-4](#) defines tape policies that specify virtual media and respectively assign Management Classes `PAY`, `ACCOUNT`, and `PROD`.

```
POLICY NAME (PPAY) MEDIA (VIRTUAL) MGMT (PAY)
POLICY NAME (PACCOUNT) MEDIA (VIRTUAL) MGMT (ACCOUNT)
POLICY NAME (PPROD) MEDIA (VIRTUAL) MGMT (PROD)
```

FIGURE 6-3 POLICY commands for Workload Grouping

Finally, [FIGURE 6-4](#) consists of TAPEREQ statements that assign policies as follows:

- ? Data sets with qualifiers of PAYROLL.** are assigned policy PPAY.
- ? Data sets with qualifiers of ACCOUNTS.** are assigned policy PACCOUNT.
- ? All other data sets are assigned policy PPROD.

```
TAPEREQ DSN(PAYROLL.** ) POLICY(PPAY)
TAPEREQ DSN(ACCOUNTS.** ) POLICY(PACCOUNT)
TAPEREQ DSN(** ) MEDIA(VIRTUAL) POLICY(PPROD)
```

FIGURE 6-4 TAPEREQ Statements for Workload Grouping

Once an MVC is used for a Storage Class it remains exclusively assigned to that Storage Class while it contains current VTV copies. This grouping of VTVs on MVCs will be retained even after the MVCs undergo reclamation processing.

Caution – You cannot use the default Storage Class (the name of the last VTSS that wrote to the MVC for reclamation or migration) to group workloads.

Segregating Individual Workloads on Separate Sets of MVCs

You can use Storage and Management Classes to segregate individual workloads on separate sets of MVCs. For example, the `STORCLAS` statements in [FIGURE 6-5](#) define Storage Classes `LOC`, `CUSTA`, and `CUSTB1`, and `CUSTB2`.

```
STORCLAS NAME (LOC) ACS (00) MEDIA (STK1R)
STORCLAS NAME (CUSTA) ACS (00) MEDIA (STK1R)
STORCLAS NAME (CUSTB1) ACS (00) MEDIA (STK1R)
STORCLAS NAME (CUSTB2) ACS (01) MEDIA (STK2P)
```

FIGURE 6-5 Storage Classes for Workload Segregation

[FIGURE 6-6](#) defines the following Management Classes:

- ? Management Class `CUSTA` specifies the `CUSTA` Storage Class on the `MIGPOL` parameter. VTCS simplexes VTVs in this Management Classes to **only** the `CUSTA` Storage Class (9840 media in the local ACS), because that's what this customer wants.
- ? Customer B wants more protection, namely duplexing to the local and remote ACSs, so Management Class `CUSTB` points to **both** the `CUSTB1` and `CUSTB2` Storage Classes.
- ? Finally, local ACS/9840 media is just fine for your own production data, so that's what Management Class `PROD` does. What I'll probably also do is set up an Archive Policy for this Management Class (see "[Archiving Data](#)" on page 129) so I can move it to Deep Storage eventually.

```
MGMT NAME (CUSTA) MIGPOL (CUSTA)
MGMT NAME (CUSTB) MIGPOL (CUSTB1, CUSTB2)
MGMT NAME (PROD) MIGPOL (LOC)
```

FIGURE 6-6 Management Classes for Workload Segregation

[FIGURE 6-7](#) defines tape policies that specify virtual media and respectively assign Management Classes `PAY`, `ACCOUNT`, and `PROD`.

```
POLICY NAME (PCUSTA) MEDIA (VIRTUAL) MGMT (CUSTA)
POLICY NAME (PCUSTB) MEDIA (VIRTUAL) MGMT (CUSTB)
POLICY NAME (PPROD) MEDIA (VIRTUAL) MGMT (PROD)
```

FIGURE 6-7 Policies for Workload Segregation

Finally, [FIGURE 6-8](#) shows the corresponding TAPEREQ statements and policy assignments:

- ? Data sets with HLQ CUSTA are assigned policy PCUSTA.
- ? Data sets with HLQ CUSTB are assigned policy PCUSTB.
- ? All other data sets are assigned policy PPROD.

```
TAPEREQ DSN(CUSTA.** ) POLICY(PCUSTA)
TAPEREQ DSN(CUSTB.** ) POLICY(PCUSTB)
TAPEREQ DSN(** ) POLICY(PPROD)
```

FIGURE 6-8 TAPEREQ Statements for Workload Segregation

Caution – You cannot use the default Storage Class (the name of the last VTSS that wrote to the MVC for reclamation or migration) to segregate workloads.

Archiving Data

You can use the ARCHAge and ARCHPol parameters of the MGMTclas statement to set an *Archive Policy* for VTVs in a Management Class. When the VTV's age exceeds the ARCHAge value, the VTV is eligible for archive per the Storage Class(es) specified on the ARCHPol parameter. The actual archive occurs in one of two ways:

- ? Automatically the next time the VTV is recalled and remigrated.
- ? On demand via the ARCHive utility.

So a “what if” for this might be to ensure compliance. It turns out that I have data that I have to retain for 7 years for external auditors, but my internal auditors might like to look at it once a year as well. Here's what that solution looks like:

```
TAPEREQ DSN (COMPLY.**) POLICY (PCOMPLY)
POLICY NAME (PCOMPLY) MEDIA (VIRTUAL) MGMT (COMPLY)
MGMT NAME (COMPLY) IMMED (DELETE) MIGPOL (LOC1) -
          ARCHAGE (365) ARCHPOL (REMDEEP)
STOR NAME (LOC1) ACS (00) MEDIA (STK1R)
STOR NAME (REMDEEP) ACS (01) MEDIA (STK2P)
```

FIGURE 6-9 Archiving Data

For this scenario, I did the following:

- ? All compliance data is immediately migrated to the local ACS and grouped on 9840 media. After the migration succeeds, the VTVs are deleted from the VTSS. The “archive age” for this data is 365 days, in case the internal auditors want to see it in the next year. After that...
- ? ...the data is eligible to be archived (moved to) 9940 media in the remote ACS.

Result: Compliance, at the best possible cost, while optimizing virtual resources.

Archive Usage Notes

As noted above, you have two methods to use for the actual archive: wait until the VTV is recalled and migrated, or do it on demand via the ARCHive utility. The problem with waiting for remigration is that we're talking about data that isn't likely to be accessed. The chances are, the best way to archive VTVs is to run the ARCHive utility periodically or as-needed.

So here's some tips for using the ARCHive utility:

- ? To select the VTVs to archive, you can specify one of the following parameters:
 - ? MGMTclas to archive the VTVs in Storage Class(es) specified by the ARCHAge/ARCHPol parameter of the specified Management Class(es).
 - ? VTV to archive a list or range of VTVs per the Management Class(es) for those VTVs.

Note – If you do not specify a value for MGMTclas or VTV, VTCS scans all VTVs. I'd probably do business via Management Class, but I can see situations where you'd want to do it by VTV volser or all VTVs.

- ⌘ By not specifying the MOVEVTV parameter, you can get a report (only) that is a valuable “what if” picture of how many VTVs, MVCs, and total MBs you will process with an archive request. StorageTek **strongly recommends**, therefore, that you first run ARCHIVE **without** MOVEVTV, then adjust the job as needed **before** specifying MOVEVTV!. For more information, see *ELS Command, Control Statement, and Utility Reference*.
- ⌘ Because demand archive can be resource intensive, you typically run ARCHIVE during non-peak processing periods. You can also use the ARCHIVE utility to override the CONFIG RECLAIM THRESHLD, MAXMVC, and CONMVC settings to optimize archive performance. You can also specify the maximum time for the archive in minutes on the ELAPSE parameter. Note that there are several limiting factors that influence archives (for example, MAXMVC and ELAPSE). VTCS enforces the strictest limiting factor. For example, if you run ARCHIVE and specify ELAPSE equal to 5 hours and MAXMVC equal to 10 *and* VTCS archives 10 MVCs in one hour, then VTCS terminates the archive before the ELAPSE value expires.
- ⌘ VTCS and HSC must be active to process a ARCHIVE request except when you specify the POLICYdd parameter. POLICYdd (which forces “report only” mode) also provides an enhanced “what if” capability. You can create one or more alternate MGMTclas statements with different Archive Policies (different ARCHAge and ARCHPol values), and use POLICYdd to view the Archive Policy and resource use for each scenario.
- ⌘ The RECONcil utility looks like ARCHIVE because RECONcil also moves VTVs from one Storage Class to another (that is, moves them from one MVC media to another and/or moves them from one ACS to another). Think of ARCHIVE as proactive and RECONcil as reactive, and you’ll see the difference, as described in [“Reconciling VTV Media and Location” on page 131...](#)

So let’s say the 365 days is up, and the internal auditors haven’t shown up. Time to go to archive. [FIGURE 6-10](#) shows example JCL to run ARCHIVE as follows:

- ⌘ Archive VTVs in Management Classes COMPLY to 9940 media in the remote ACS.
- ⌘ Set MAXMVC to 60, CONMVC to 8, and ELAPSE to 60 for the ARCHIVE job.

```

//ARCHIVE      EXEC PGM=SLUADMIN
//STEPLIB DD DSN=hlq.SEALINK,DISP=SHR //SLSPRINTDD SYSOUT=*
//SLSIN      DD *
              ARCH MGMT(COMPLY) MAXMVC(60) CONMVC(8) ELAPSE(360) MOVEVTV

```

FIGURE 6-10 Example JCL for the ARCHIVE utility

Tip – The MOVEVTV parameter also gives you a report, so you can see how well (or not) you did. If your tuning parameters didn’t archive the everything you wanted to archive, then adjust your job and rerun...

Reconciling VTV Media and Location

Using RECONcil to reconcile VTV media and location basically means moving VTVs from one Storage Class to another. Is this at all like archiving data with ARCHive? In terms of data movement, yes. In terms of the reasons why you're doing it, it's a reactive rather than proactive move. You typically reconcile VTVs when:

- ? The VTVs are on the wrong media, in the wrong ACS, or both.
- ? An ACS is unavailable for a considerable period of time, then is brought back online. In this case, you would first change the MIGpol parameter on the MGMTclas statement for the affected VTVs to point to a different ACS (and media, if desired). When the original ACS comes back online, you then change the MIGpol parameter on the MGMTclas statement to point to the original ACS, and run RECONcil specifying the updated MGMTclas (or STORclas) statement(s) to move the VTVs to the original ACS.

For details of the reconciling process, see [“RECONcil Example” on page 131](#).

RECONcil Example

Let's say you want to reconcile VTVs that are on the wrong media and in the wrong ACS. How would you know this? Well, you peruse your VTV reports on a weekly basis as described in *Managing HSC and VTCS*. This week, I notice that all the VTVs in my production (PROD) Management Class are on the wrong media *and* in the wrong ACS! And the Storage Class doesn't look like the correct one, either...

How could this have happened? I *thought* I did the following:

```
STORCLAS NAME (LOC) ACS (00) MEDIA (STK1R)
STORCLAS NAME (CUSTA) ACS (00) MEDIA (STK1R)
STORCLAS NAME (CUSTB1) ACS (00) MEDIA (STK1R)
STORCLAS NAME (CUSTB2) ACS (01) MEDIA (STK2P)
MGMT NAME (CUSTA) MIGPOL (CUSTA)
MGMT NAME (CUSTB) MIGPOL (CUSTB1, CUSTB2)
MGMT NAME (PROD) MIGPOL (LOC)
```

FIGURE 6-11 Storage Classes/Management Classes for Workload Segregation

According to [FIGURE 6-11](#), everything in Management Class PROD should have ended up on 9840 media in the local ACS...but in fact, they're all on 9940 media in the remote ACS...almost as if they were in the wrong Storage Class...

On closer examination, my production Management Class actually looks like this:

```
MGMT NAME (PROD) MIGPOL (CUSTA)
```

...which is not good for another reason, because it means my production data is co-resident on the same MVCs that are supposed to be dedicated to one of my customers. Time to run RECONcil, right? Well, not quite. RECONcil only moves VTVs out of the wrong Storage Class, and right now, according to the way I wrote my Management Class statement, CUSTA is the right Storage Class! So before I run RECONcil, I have to go back and fix the Management Class thusly:

```
MGMT NAME (PROD) MIGPOL (LOC)
```

Now I can run RECONcil as shown in [FIGURE 6-10](#) as follows:

- ? Move VTVs in Management Class PROD to their (updated) correct location in Storage Class LOC.
- ? Set MAXMVC to 60, CONMVC to 8, and ELAPSE to 60 for the RECONcil job.

```
//RECONCIL EXEC PGM=SLUADMIN
//STEPLIB DD DSN=hlq.SEALINK,DISP=SHR
//SLSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//SLSIN DD *
      RECON MGMT (PROD) MAXMVC (60)
              CONMVC (8) ELAPSE (360) MOVEVTV
```

FIGURE 6-12 Example JCL for the RECONcil utility

RECONcil Usage Notes

To select the VTVs to reconcile, you can specify one of the following parameters:

- ? MGMTclas to move the VTVs to the Storage Class(es) specified by the MIGpol parameter. This is what we did in [“RECONcil Example” on page 131](#). Management Class points to the wrong Storage Class, get it pointed toward the right Storage Class, run RECONcil against the updated Management Class.
- ? STORclas to move the VTVs to the specified Storage Class(es). I’d probably use this when an ACS is unavailable for a considerable period of time.
- ? MVC to reconcile the VTVs on a list or range of MVCs. The VTVs are moved to the Storage Class(es) specified by the MIGpol parameter of the MGMTclas statement(s) for the VTVs. I’d use this or the VTV option as onesies/twosies kind of fix-ups.
- ? VTV to reconcile a list or range of VTVs. The VTVs are moved to the Storage Class(es) specified by the MIGpol parameter of the Management Class(es) for the VTVs.

Note –

- ? If you do not specify a value for MGMTclas or VTV, VTCS scans all VTVs.
- ? Because reconciling VTVs can be resource intensive, you typically run RECONcil during non-peak processing periods. You can also use the RECONcil utility to override the CONFIG RECLAIM THRESHLD, MAXMVC, and CONMVC settings to optimize reconcile performance. You can also specify the maximum time for the reconcile in minutes on the ELAPSE parameter.

Note that there are several limiting factors that influence reconciliations (for example, MAXMVC and ELAPSE). VTCS enforces the strictest limiting factor. For example, if you run RECONcil and specify ELAPSE equal to 5 hours and MAXMVC equal to 10 *and* VTCS reconciles 10 MVCs in one hour, then VTCS terminates the reconciliations before the ELAPSE value expires.

- ? By not specifying the MOVEVTV parameter, you can get a report (only) that is a valuable “what if” picture of how many VTVs, MVCs, and total MBs you will process with a reconcile request. StorageTek **strongly recommends**, therefore, that you first run RECONcil **without** MOVEVTV, then adjust the job as needed **before** specifying MOVEVTV!. For more information, see *ELS Command, Control Statement, and Utility Reference*.

- ⌚ VTCS and HSC must be active to process a RECONcil request except when you specify the POLICYdd parameter. POLICYdd (which forces “report only” mode) also provides an enhanced “what if” capability. You can create one or more alternate MGMTclas statements with different reconciliation scenarios (different MIGpol values), and use POLICYdd to view the VTVs reconciled and resource use for each scenario.
 - ⌚ VTCS and HSC must be active to process a RECONcil request.
-

Named MVC Pools or Not?

Named MVC Pools are the right tool for the job for all of your service groups: You can use Named MVC Pools to give an application ownership of the MVCs in the named pool. For example, a service group might elect to use Named MVC Pools where its customers have legal requirements to buy and own a group of MVCs.

However, if you do *not* have a specific requirement for Named MVC Pools but you *do* want to group or segregate client data on MVCs, StorageTek **strongly advises** that you do *not* use Named MVC Pools. Instead, use the methods described in the following sections:

- ? [“Grouping Multiple Workloads on Shared MVCs” on page 125](#)
- ? [“Segregating Individual Workloads on Separate Sets of MVCs” on page 127](#)

The above sections tell how to use Storage Classes to group or segregate data on MVCs that are selected from the system-wide MVC pool. In this case, you need to manage only a single MVC pool.

If you create Named MVC Pools, you must **explicitly** manage each pool, which includes ensuring that each pool has sufficient free MVCs and available MVC space, and potentially includes setting different policies for each pool using the MVCPool MVCFREE, MAXMVC, THRESH, and START parameters.

If you **do** elect to use Named MVC Pools, go to [“Creating and Using Named MVC Pools” on page 135](#).

? Creating and Using Named MVC Pools

To create and use Named MVC Pools, do the following:

1. Modify existing POOLPARAM statements and/or add additional statements to define the Named MVC Pools.

If you do not specify the POOLPARAM NAME parameter, VTCS does not create a Named MVC Subpool and assigns the specified volumes to the default pool (DEFAULTPOOL). You cannot create Named MVC Pools with the reserved names DEFAULTPOOL and ALL.

You can use the optional MCVFREE, MAXMVC, THRESH, and START parameters to specify values for the Named MVC Pool that override the global values specified on CONFIG.

For example, the following VOLPARM/POOLPARAM statements defines a range of T10000 Full volumes to be encrypted for Named Pool SYS1MVCT1 with reclamation parameter values that override the CONFIG global values:

```
VOLPARM VOLSER (T10K2000-T10K2999) MEDIA (T10000T1) RECTECH (T1AE)
POOLPARAM NAME (SYS1MVCT1) TYPE (MVC) MCVFREE (40) MAXMVC (4) THRESH (60)
START (70)
```

2. Run the SET VOLPARM to apply the volume/pool definitions:

```
SET VOLPARM APPLY (YES)
```

3. Define Storage Classes and associate them with Named MVC Pools.

For example, the following STORclass statement defines STORCL1 and associates this Storage Class with Named MVC Pool CUST1POOL. Requests to use MVCs for storage class STORCL1 will result in MVCs being selected only from the named pool SYS1MVCT1.

```
STOR NAME(STORCL1) MEDIA(T1AE) MVCPOOL(SYS1MVCT1)
```

4. Create Management Classes that specify the Storage Classes you defined in Step 3 and specify these Management Classes when you route data to the Named MVC Pool.

For more information, see [“Creating and Using VTCS Management and Storage Classes: The Basics” on page 122](#).

5. Specify the Management Class name to VTCS on any of the following:

- ? The SMC TAPEREQ statement.
- ? SMS routines that you write to the StorageTek DFSMS interface; for more information, see *SMC Configuration and Administration Guide*.

Note – If you specify a Management Class on a TAPEREQ statement and an SMS routine, the Management Class on the SMS routine takes precedence.

Finding and Fixing VTCS Problems

This section is about what to do when things go wrong. Okay, you've already done your dailies per [“Using the VTCS Dashboard” on page 73](#), and your as-needs per [“Doing the “HSC Basic” Chores” on page 23](#), and things are *still* not going well. Here is the place where you find out how to get VTCS working again when problems occur, starting with the simple problems you'll probably run across in [“Fixing Common Problems” on page 138](#).

Note – Recovering the CDS is primarily an HSC task, but it also has a VSM side. For more information, see [“Restoring the CDS” on page 33](#).

Fixing Common Problems

“Common”, in this context, just means things that are likely to go wrong despite your best efforts. The way you find out about trouble often doubles back to taking another look at your VTCS Dashboard, and the fixes often reside in your as-needed tasks.

Before we begin with VTV mount performance problems, let’s emphasize that these are common problems that you can *generally* diagnose and fix on your own. After making a reasonable effort, however, if things still aren’t working out, it’s time to call for help as described in [“Customer Support” on page 440](#). There are also some tools that we don’t talk about here, like traces, because you basically only want to use them under the direction of StorageTek service.

Poor VTV Mount Performance

If VTV mounts occur very slowly or not at all, check the following:

- ⌘ Are mounts failing on a single VTD? This usually occurs because a host requests a mount of an MVC–resident VTV that VSM cannot recall. If so, do the following:
 - ⌘ Enter a Display Queue DETail command to check the queued recalls. If a recall is queued waiting for an MVC, it may be in use by another VTCS process, which you can check with Display Active DETail.
 - ⌘ If the MVC is *not* in use, next enter an HSC DISPLAY VOLUME command. Is the MVC actually in the ACS? If not, you must reenter the MVC to complete the recall.
 - ⌘ Next, are RTDs available to mount the MVC to recall the VTV? Enter Display RTD to check RTD availability. If no RTDs are available, use Display on all hosts to check active and queued processes.

If necessary, use Cancel to cancel processes and free an RTD so the recall can complete. With Cancel, VTCS tries to stop processes without affecting system resources or information; therefore, the cancellation may not occur immediately. For example, VTCS may wait for hardware time out periods before terminating a process using a specific RTD.

Note – If you cancel a parent request, you stop the parent and all child requests. If you cancel a child request, the parent request continues processing.

Caution – If you cancel a task associated with migration scheduler (either with the MIGrate parameter or by specific process ID), this task will terminate but migration scheduler will start another migration task at its next timer interval. You can, however, use migrate-to-threshold to stop automigration by specifying a value greater than the current DBU.

Tip – Setting the MGMTclas statement IMMEdmig parameter to either KEEP or DELETE preferences migration processing (and RTD use for migration) and may increase I/O to the RTDs.

Also note that you can change the CONFIG MAXMIG and MINMIG parameter settings to rebalance automatic migration tasks with other tasks (such as recall and reclaim) for the RTDs you have defined for each VTSS.

- ? Are the mounts failing on multiple VTDs? If so, check the following:
 - ? Check VTD status with Display VTD.
 - ? Enter Display Active. If there are no active processes, ensure that VTCS, HSC, all VTSSs, and all communications are functioning normally.
 - ? Ensure that you have sufficient VTSS space.
 - ? Check to see if your system is running out of available MVCs or usable MVC space.
 - ? Raising the low AMT tends to keep more VTVs resident in VTSS space, which may help prevent virtual mounts from failing.
- ? If a VTV mount fails, even if VTDs are online, use the MVS VARY command to vary VTDs online, use the MVS UNLOAD command to clear the VTDs, then use the HSC MOUNT and DISMOUNT commands to retry the operation.

Poor Migration Performance

If VTV migration occurs very slowly, check the following:

- ? Start with Display MIGrate, which will show you, in broad strokes, how well or poorly your various migration tasks are doing. You may be able to rearrange the furniture (for example, raise the MAXMIG/MINMIG values) to get things moving.
- ? Ensure that your supply of RTDs and MVCs is in good shape as described in [“Checking Nearline Tape Status \(Daily\)” on page 78](#). If you want to get down to bits and bytes, also use Display Queue DETail to check the status of queued processes. If many processes are waiting for RTDs, and you are sharing RTDs with MVS, you may want to vary transports offline to MVS and online to VSM.

Note – In the JES3 environment, VTV mounts may fail if you have not created and installed the correct User Exit modifications.

Migration Failures

There's only one thing worse than poor migration performance, and that's no migration at all. Fortunately, VTCS provides detailed information about migration failures as described in the following sections:

- ? [“Messages Enhancements” on page 140](#)
- ? [“Display STORCLAs” on page 141](#)
- ? [“Enhanced MVC Pool Validation” on page 141](#)
- ? [“Enhanced Storage Class Validation” on page 142](#)

Messages Enhancements

To provide greater detail about migration failures, message SLS6700E is replaced by the following messages:

- ? SLS6853E Migration failed Storage Class:*stor-clas-name* ACS:*acs-id* VTSS:*vtss-name* - *MVCPool poolname is not defined*
- ? SLS6854E Migration failed Storage Class:*stor-clas-name* ACS:*acs-id* VTSS:*vtss-name* - *no MVCs found for specified media*
- ? SLS6855E Migration failed Storage Class:*stor-clas-name* ACS:*acs-id* VTSS:*vtss-name* - *no MVCs found for specified media/SC/ACS*
- ? SLS6856E Migration failed Storage Class:*stor-clas-name* ACS:*acs-id* VTSS:*vtss-name* - *no usable MVCs found for specified media/SC/ACS*
- ? SLS6857E Migration failed Storage Class:*stor-clas-name* ACS:*acs-id* VTSS:*vtss-name* - *no RTDs for requested media and ACS*
- ? SLS6858E Migration failed Storage Class:*stor-clas-name* ACS:*acs-id* VTSS:*vtss-name* - *all RTDs for requested media and ACS are offline*
- ? SLS6859E Migration failed Storage Class:*stor-clas-name* ACS:*acs-id* VTSS:*vtss-name* - *unknown reason (X'xx')*

In addition, message SLS6860I is always output after any of the preceding messages are issued to provide details of the Storage Class. If applicable, SLS6860I also reports any errors with regard to satisfying the migration requirements:

- ? If the MVC Pool is undefined.
- ? If the MVC Pool contains none of the specified media.
- ? If the MVC Pool contains no free MVCs of the specified media.
- ? If the VTSS/ACS has no suitable RTD defined to write the migration MVC.
- ? If all suitable RTDs are offline.

The result is that you're now getting greater granularity of information, and more specific recommendations for fixes when migration failures **do** occur.

Display STORCLAs

Display is enhanced with the STORCLAs parameter, whose output is:

- ? The characteristics of the Storage Class (ACS, MVC Pool, and Media).
- ? VTVs waiting migration to the Storage Class from any VTSS.
- ? Requirements of the MVCs to be used for migration.
- ? The device type(s) of the RTDs needed to write to the migration MVCs.
- ? Any errors with regard to satisfying the migration requirements.

Once again, VTCS provides information about a critical element (Storage Classes) in the migration scenario...

Enhanced MVC Pool Validation

Validation of MVC Pools is enhanced to check for common set-up errors:

- ? Has at least one valid MVC Pool been defined? If not, message SLS6845E is issued. VTCS functionality is severely degraded because no migrations can occur. If you receive this message, you must define appropriate MVC Pools. See the next bullet...
- ? Does the default MVC Pool (DEFAULTPOOL) exist? DEFAULTPOOL is used when migrating to a Storage Class that does not specify a Named MVC Pool and in error situations with Storage Class !ERROR. If DEFAULTPOOL does not exist, message SLS6846W is issued.

You indicate migrations to a Storage Class should use a particular MVC Pool by coding `MVCPool(pool-name)` on the STORCLAS statement. If `MVCPool(pool-name)` is **not** coded, VTCS treats the STORCLAS as though `MVCPool(DEFAULTPOOL)` was coded.

Enhanced Storage Class Validation

To continue in this theme, validation of Storage Classes is enhanced to check for common set-up errors:

- ⌚ If you specify a Named MVC Pool on a Storage Class (`STORCLAS NAME(stor-clas-name) MVCPOOL(poolname)`), VTCS checks that the Named MVC Pool is defined. Therefore, if you code `STORCLAS NAME(stor-clas-name) MVCPOOL(poolname)`, ensure that the Named MVC Pool exists. If not, VTCS issues message SLS6848W. If you get this message, define the Named MVC Pool, change your Storage Class definition, or both.
- ⌚ Similarly, if you do **not** specify a Named MVC Pool on a Storage Class (`STORCLAS NAME(stor-clas-name)`), VTCS checks that the DEFAULTPOOL is defined. Therefore, if you code `STORCLAS NAME(stor-clas-name)`, ensure that there is **at least** one MVCPOOL statement that does not create a Named MVC Pool. If not, VTCS issues message SLS6846W. If you get this message, code at least one MVCPOOL statement that does not create a Named MVC Pool, change your Storage Class definition, or both.
- ⌚ If you specify an MVC media on a Storage Class (`STORCLAS NAME(stor-clas-name) MEDIA(media-type)`), VTCS checks that the MVC Pool contains media of type *media-type* (if a Named MVC Pool is not specified, DEFAULTPOOL is implied). If not, message VTCS issues message SLS6849W. Ensure that the media type exists in the corresponding pool, change your Storage Class definition, or both.
- ⌚ If you specify an ACS and media type on a Storage Class (`STORCLAS NAME(stor-clas-name) ACS(acs-id) MEDIA(media-type)`), VTCS checks that there are RTDs in the specified ACS compatible with the specified media type. If not, message VTCS issues message SLS6851W. Ensure that required RTD type exists in the specified ACS, change your Storage Class definition, or both.
- ⌚ If you specify media type without a specific ACS on a Storage Class (`STORCLAS NAME(stor-clas-name) MEDIA(media-type)`), VTCS checks that there are RTDs in the configuration compatible with the specified media type. If not, message VTCS issues message SLS6851W. Ensure that required RTD type(s) exist in the configuration, change your Storage Class definition, or both.

RTD/MVC Failures

At first, you may not know if you're looking at a media or drive failure. That is, if VTCS detects read/write errors on an MVC, VTCS swaps the MVC to another RTD. If VTCS detects no further read/write errors on the MVC, VTCS assumes that the first RTD is in error.

Message SLS6662A indicates that an RTD is in *maintenance mode*, and this status is also reported on Display RTD output. An RTD in maintenance mode is typically in error and requires assistance from your hardware operations or service personnel. Note that an RTD in *recovery mode* is initializing (when varied online, for example), and typically is *not* in error.

If a failed RTD cannot be quickly repaired or if the failed RTD is attached to a remote ACS, you may want to remove the RTD from your configuration to prevent attempts to allocate that RTD. Remove the RTD statement for the RTD and rerun CONFIG.

Caution – In a dual-ACS configuration (two ACSs connected to a single VTSS), ensure that you do **not** allow all RTDs in either ACS to be unavailable to the VTSS for an extended period. If no RTDs are available in that ACS, migrates to or recalls from that ACS cannot occur, and the VTSS space can fill up. In addition, this condition can also cause stalled migrations to RTDs in the other ACS.

In a dual-ACS configuration, therefore, if you must make all RTDs in an ACS unavailable for an extended period, remove the RTDs from the configuration as described above.

Okay, It's a Bad MVC...

...but how bad? Let's say you ran through the check list for RTD problems, above, and that's not the problem. You also did all the things you can reasonably do to make more MVC space available, and compared the volsers on the MVC Summary Report to an HSC Volume Report...no problem, the MVCs actually were in the in the ACS, otherwise you would have either reentered or replaced any MVCs not listed on the HSC Volume Report.

So it really *does* look like a media problem. You'll see what kind of media problem via the MVC and VTV reports described in "[Checking Nearline Tape Status \(Daily\)](#)" on page 78...and in that section, we've talked about some of the fixes for the most straightforward MVC anomalies. The following is an exhaustive list of the MVC statuses you **don't** want to see on your MVC and VTV reports, and what to do about them:

BROKEN

This is a generic error that indicates the MVC, drive, or combination of the two has a problem. VTCS attempts to de-preference MVCs with this state. **In general**, to clear this state:

If the MVC caused the problem, use a DRAIN(EJECT) command to remove the MVC from service.

If the RTD caused the problem, use the MVCMAINT utility to reset the MVC state.

Note also that one or more of the following messages is issued for BROKEN status: SLS6686, SLS6687, SLS6688, SLS6690. For detailed recovery procedures for these messages, see *VTCS Messages and Codes*.

DATA CHECK

A data check condition has been reported against this MVC. VTCS attempts to de-preference MVCs with this state. To clear this state:

If all VTVs on the MVC are duplexed, use MVCDRAIN on the MVC without the Eject option. This recovers all VTVs and removes the MVC from service.

If all VTVs on the MVC are not duplexed, VTCS AUDIT the MVC. The audit will probably fail. After the audit, do an MVCDRAIN (no eject). This recalls the VTVs before the data-check area in ascending block-id order and the VTVs after the data-check area in a descending block-id order. Processing the VTVs in this sequence ensures that VTCS recovers as many VTVs as possible from the media. You then need to recreate the data for any VTVs still on the MVC.

After clearing data checks, remove and replace MVCs with data check errors as described in "[Permanently Removing MVCs](#)" on page 98. This procedure also tells how to remove an MVC from VTCS use and return it to Nearline operations.

DRAINING

The MVC is either currently being drained or has been the subject of a failed MVCDRAIN.

IN ERROR

An error occurred while the MVC was mounted.

INITIALIZED

the MVC has been initialized.

LOST - FAILED TO MOUNT

VTCS attempted to mount an MVC and the mount did not complete within a 15-minute time-out period. VTCS is attempting to recover from a situation that may be caused by hardware problems, HSC problems, or by the MVC being removed from the ACS. VTCS attempts to de-preference MVCs with this state.

If VTCS does perform a subsequent successful mount of an MVC with LOST(ON) state, VTCS sets the state to LOST(OFF).

Determine the cause of the error and fix it. You can also use the VTCS MVCMAINT utility to set LOST(OFF) for the following events:

LOST(ON) was set due to LSM failures or drive errors that have been resolved

LOST(ON) was set because the MVC was outside the ACS and has been reentered.

MARKED FULL

The MVC is full and is not a candidate for future migrations.

MOUNTED

The MVC is mounted on an RTD.

NOT-INITIALIZED

The MVC has been defined via the CONFIG utility, but has not ever been used.

READ ONLY

The MVC has been marked read-only because of one of the following conditions:

- ? The MVC being the target of an export or consolidation process. The read-only state protects the MVC from further updates.
- ? The MVC media is set to file protect. Correct the error and use the MVCMAINT utility to set READONLY(OFF).
- ? The MVC does not having the appropriate SAF rules set to enable VTCS to update the MVC. Correct the error (for more information, see “Defining A Security System User ID for HSC, SMC, and VTCS” in *Installing ELS* and use the MVCMAINT utility to set READONLY(OFF).

BEING AUDITED

The MVC is either currently being audited or has been the subject of a failed audit. If the audit failed, VTCS will not use the MVC for migration. To clear this condition, rerun the AUDIT utility against this MVC.

LOGICALLY EJECTED

The MVC has either been the subject of an MVCDRAIN Eject or the MVC was ejected for update by a RACROUTE call. The MVC will not be used again for migration or recall. To clear this condition, use MVCDRAIN against the MVC without the Eject option.

RETIRED

The MVC is retired. VTCS will recall from, but not migrate to, the MVC. Replace the MVC as soon as possible.

WARRANTY HAS EXPIRED

The MVC’s warranty has expired. VTCS continues to use the MVC. You should start making plans to replace the MVC when it reaches Retired state.

INVALID MIR

VTCS has received status from an RTD to indicate the MIR (media information record) for a 9x40 media is invalid. An invalid MIR does not prevent access to data but may cause significant performance problems while accessing records on the tape. The MVC is not capable of high-speed searches on areas of the tape that do not have a valid MIR entry.

VTCS attempts to de-preference MVCs with this condition. For recalls, if the VTV resides on multiple MVCs, VTCS selects MVCs with valid MIRs ahead of MVCs with invalid MIRs. VTCS avoids using MVCs with invalid MIRs for migration, unless the migration is at the beginning of the tape. Migrating from the beginning of tape will correct the MIR.

VTCS detects the invalid MIR condition at either mount time or dismount time. If detected at mount time and the operation can be completed with another MVC, VTCS dismounts the first MVC and selects the alternate MVC. **Note that** VTCS has only a limited ability to switch to an alternate MVC. That is, it is mainly used for migrate and virtual mount.

For MVCs with invalid MIRs, determine the cause of the error, which may be caused by media or drive problems, and fix the error.

To recover an MVC with an invalid MIR, do the following:

- 1. Drain the MVC with EJECT.**

```
MVCDRAIN MVC (volser) RECALWER (NO) EJECT
```

- 2. Use MVCMAINT to set INVLDMIR to OFF.**

```
MVCMAINT MVC (volser) INVLDMIR (OFF)
```

- 3. Redrain the MVC without EJECT**

```
MVCDRAIN MVC (volser) RECALWER (NO)
```

At this point, the data is completely off of the MVC (if it was removable in the first place), and the CDS is cleared of any error status. At the next migration, the MVC generates another MIR error for the mount/read volser open of the tape. However, the MVC will get written to from the beginning of tape, which corrects the actual hardware MIR.

Finally, rerun [Step 1](#) through [Step 3](#) to reset the MVC status.

? Recovering an MVC with a Data Check

This is a very specific instance of the general “bad MVC” woes, and you know it’s required when you see an MVC data check error on your MVC and VTV reports.

To recover an MVC with a Data Check:

1. Run an MVC audit against the MVC.

The audit attempts to read the VTV metadata sequentially from the MVC. The audit fails when it encounters the data check, which leaves the MVC in an auditing state. This prevents VTCS from selecting this MVC for output.

2. Run an MVCDRAIN Eject for the MVC.

This causes all the available VTVs to be recalled to a VTSS and then remigrated to a new error-free MVC. This logically removes the MVC from the MVC pool.

Note –

- ? Due to the error status of the MVC, VTCS recalls VTVs from alternate MVCs if possible.
 - ? If VTVs must be recalled from the MVC in error (no other copies available), then:
 - ? VTVs **before** the data check area are recalled in ascending block ID order.
 - ? VTVs **after** the data check area are recalled in descending block ID order.
-

3. Determine if any VTVs could not be recovered from the MVC.

Run an MVC Detail report for the MVC. If any VTVs are still reported as being on the MVC, then these VTVs are not recoverable; you must use other methods to recover your data.

4. Manage the defective MVC by doing one of the following:

- ? Replace the defective MVC with an initialized tape volume with the same internal and external labels:
 - a. HSC EJECT the defective MVC.
 - b. HSC ENTER the replacement MVC.
 - c. Initialize the tape as required.
 - d. HSC AUDIT the new MVC.
 - e. Run an MVCDRAIN (no EJECT) to return the MVC to the MVC pool.
- ? Remove the MVC from the system:
 - a. HSC EJECT the defective MVC.
 - b. Edit the MVC pool definitions to remove the defective MVC from the pool.
 - c. Enter a VT MVCDEF on all active hosts to activate the new MVC pool definitions.

Using the RTV Utility

The RTV utility is another item you're probably only going to use after talking with StorageTek service, because RTV is designed to read VTV data directly from an MVC without any assistance from VTCS...for example, in the case that you really *have* lost the CDS.

RTV is a standalone utility, and the way it works is to read a VTV from an MVC, decompress the VTV, then write the data to a single output tape (real tape volume) so the data can be read by user applications. Because RTV utility is a stand-alone utility; you can run RTV when VSM is down but the MVS system is up.

What the RTV Utility Can Recover

The RTV utility can recover:

- ? All or specified VTVs from a specified MVC. If you do not know the location of the most current version of a VTV on the MVC, specify only the VTV volser, and RTV will convert the most current version of the VTV it finds on this MVC.
- ? A VTV at a specified block ID on a specified MVC. The LISTONLY parameter listing supplies a Block ID value that you can use as input to the RTV utility to convert a VTV to a Nearline volume. Specifying the volser and Block ID speeds positioning time.
- ? A VTV specified by logical data set number on a specified MVC. Specifying the volser and logical data set number will have a much longer positioning time compared to specifying volser and Block ID. Using volser and Block ID is the preferred method to access a single VTV.

Note – If more than one VTV is specified, or if no BLOCKid or FILEnum parameter is specified, the entire MVC will be read and the MVC contents displayed as part of the output. Reading of the entire MVC is necessary to insure that only the most current copy of a VTV is decompressed.

General Usage Guidelines

- ? The output volume that contains the converted VTV(s) must be at least the size of your maximum VTV size (400 Mb, 800 Mb, 2 Gb, or 4 Gb) to ensure that it can contain an individual VTV.
- ? The VTCS MVC and VTV reports provide information to specify which copy of a VTV you want RTV to recover. Ensure that you have a current copy of these reports before you run the RTV utility. In addition, to help identify the VTVs you want to convert, you can use the LISTONLY parameter to produce a list of the VTVs on an MVC.

Because multiple copies of the same VTV can exist on the same or different MVCs, **study carefully** your VTV and MVC reports and LISTONLY listings to ensure that you are using the correct MVC to convert the most current copy of a VTV!

- ? The RTV utility does not update the system catalog or TMC with information about the converted volumes; you must do this manually.

Security Considerations

- ? You must have read access both to the VTVs you want to convert and to the MVC that contains these VTVs or your system's security application cannot be running. Otherwise, the conversion will fail.
- ? Ensure that you APF authorize the RTV utility load library.
- ? RTV makes no attempts to bypass any TMS protection. All RTV tape mounts are subject to full TMS control.

Note – Because the RTV utility must be capable of rewriting the tape standard labels on the output unit and positioning over label information on the input unit, Dynamic Allocation is used to invoke bypass label processing (BLP) on the tape volumes. This requires that the library that contains the SWSRTV executable code be APF authorized.

JCL Examples

Listing the VTVs on an MVC

FIGURE 7-1 shows example JCL to lists the VTVs on MVC MVC001.

```
//JOBVRECJOB(account),programmer
//RUNRTV EXEC PGM=SWSRTV,PARM='MIXED'
//STEPLIB DD DSN=hlq.SEALINK,DISP=SHR
//SLSPRINT DD SYSOUT=A
//SLSIN DD *
    RTV MVC(MVC001) INUNIT(/1AB4) LISTONLY
/*
//
```

FIGURE 7-1 Example JCL to run the RTV utility: LISTONLY run

Converting a Single VTV by Specifying Its Volser

FIGURE 7-2 shows example JCL to run the RTV utility to convert VTV VTV200 on MVC MVC001, which will be mounted on a 3490E transport. The output (converted VTV VTV200) goes to the output volume mounted on transport 280, and RTV copies the VTV VOLID from the VTV to the output volume.

```
//JOBVRECJOB(account),programmer
//RUNRTV EXEC PGM=SWSRTV,PARM='MIXED'
//STEPLIB DD DSN=hlq.SEALINK,DISP=SHR
//SLSPRINT DD SYSOUT=A
//SLSIN DD *
    RTV MVC(MVC001) INUNIT(3490E) VTV(VTV200) CPYVOLID OUTUNIT(280)
/*
//
```

FIGURE 7-2 Example JCL to run the RTV utility: single VTV by volser

Converting a Single VTV by Specifying Its Volser and Block ID

FIGURE 7-3 shows example JCL to run the RTV utility to convert VTV VTV200 at block ID x'8EA484AB' on MVC MVC001, which will be mounted on a 3490E transport. The output (converted VTV VTV200) goes to the output volume mounted on transport 480.

```
//JOBVRECJOB(account),programmer
//RUNRTV EXEC PGM=SWSRTV,PARM='MIXED'
//STEPLIB DD DSN=hlq.SEALINK,DISP=SHR
//SLSPRINT DD SYSOUT=A
//SLSIN DD *
    RTV MVC(MVC001) INUNIT(3490E) VTV(VTV200) BLOCK(8EA484AB)
    OUTUNIT(480)
/*
//
```

FIGURE 7-3 Example JCL to run the RTV utility: single VTV by volser and block ID

LCM Control Statements

TABLE A-1 LCM Control Statements

LCM Control Statement	Status	HSC/VTCS Utility Command
ACTION CONSOLIDATE	Enhanced	CONSOLIDATE
ACTION DRAIN	New	MVCDRAIN
ACTION EJECT	Enhanced	EJECT
ACTION EXPORT	Enhanced	EXPORT
ACTION MIGRATE	Enhanced	MIGRATE
ACTION MOVE	Enhanced	MOVE
ACTION RECALL	Enhanced	RECALL
ACTION RECLAIM	New	RECLAIM
ACTION SCRATCH	New	SCRATCH
ACTION UNSCRATCH	New	UNSCRATCH, REPLACEALL
DATASET	Enhanced	
LOCATION	Unchanged	
MANAGE PHYSICAL	Unchanged	
MANAGE VIRTUAL	Unchanged	
METHOD	Enhanced	
OPTIONS	Enhanced	
OPTIONS SYNC and SYNCVTV MANAGE PHYSICAL and MANAGE VIRTUAL	Unchanged	SLUCONDB (and SMC equivalent)
PULLLIST	Unchanged	
REPORT CELLCNT	Unchanged	
REPORT CONSOLIDATE	Unchanged	
REPORT DATASET	Unchanged	

TABLE A-1 LCM Control Statements

LCM Control Statement	Status	HSC/VTCS Utility Command
REPORT EJECT	Unchanged	
REPORT ENTER	Unchanged	
REPORT EXPORT	Unchanged	
REPORT LSM	Enhanced	
REPORT MIGRATE	Unchanged	
REPORT MULTIPLE	New	MVCRPT
REPORT NONSRCNT	Unchanged	
REPORT OPERATOR	Unchanged	
REPORT PHYSICAL	New	VOLRPT
REPORT RECALL	Unchanged	
REPORT SRCNT	Unchanged	
REPORT SUMMARY	Unchanged	
REPORT VIRTUAL	New	VTVRPT
REPORT VOLUME	Enhanced	
SET METHOD	Enhanced	
SUBPOOL	Enhanced	
SUBPOOL and MANAGE PHYSICAL BALSCR	Unchanged	SCRATCH REDISTRIBUTION
TMS CA1	Enhanced	
TMS COMMON	Enhanced	
TMS CTT	Enhanced	
TMS CUSTOM	Enhanced	
TMS OPEN	Enhanced	
TMS RMM	Enhanced	
TMS TLMS	Enhanced	
UNMANAGED	Enhanced	

Additional SLUPCOPY Information

This appendix provides additional information about SLUPCOPY.

SLUPCOPY Processing

During normal operation, HSC periodically issues a RESERVE on the Primary CDS volume. HSC also holds an allocation and a shared enqueue on all copies of the CDS while it is active, even at BASE service level. Any backup of the CDS is therefore “fuzzy” unless all updates to the CDS can be prevented during the time it takes to make a PIT copy. SLUPCOPY accomplishes this necessary serialization by acquiring the same RESERVE on the HSC CDS, but since the PIT copy can be created in seconds instead of minutes, the backup is significantly less disruptive to the operation of the HSC.

Why not just use SnapShot, DFSMSdss, or FDRSNAP directly? For the serialization of volumes, DFSMSdss issues a RESERVE using the SYSVTOC QNAME, so this only prevents VTOC updates and DADSM functions (Allocate, Delete, Extend, Rename, etc.) and “does not ensure integrity at the data set level.” See “Volume Serialization” in the *z/OS V1R8.0 DFSMS Storage Administration Reference (for DFSMSHsm, DFSMSdss, DFSMSdftp)*.

For the serialization of data sets, DFSMSdss issues an ENQ using the SYSDSN QNAME and the data set name as the RNAME. If the SHARE keyword is not specified, an exclusive ENQ is issued, but this will conflict with HSC's shared ENQ; if the SHARE keyword is specified, a shared ENQ is issued, but this is insufficient to insure data consistency.

A RESERVE on the HSC CDS is therefore required, but since SnapShot, DFSMSdss, and FDRSNAP cannot issue a RESERVE with the correct QNAME and RNAME, the only way to insure the consistency of the backup is for an application program (SLUPCOPY) to use the correct HSC QNAME and RNAME for the RESERVE/DEQ sequence and invoke the PIT copy while the RESERVE is held.

SLUPCOPY provides two functions:

- ? a COPY function that performs an actual PIT copy
- ? a TEST function that only simulates a PIT copy.

SLUPCOPY processing proceeds generally as follows:

1. OPEN, RESERVE, and READ the first 4K block of the HSC Primary CDS (the READ insures the RESERVE takes effect immediately in SYNCHRES=NO environments)
2. READ the second 4K block of the HSC Primary CDS
3. For the COPY function only, update the last backup date and time in the second block and WRITE the block back to the Primary CDS.
4. LOAD and DELETE either SIBBATCH, ADRDSSU, or FDRSNAP to verify that the program is accessible via the system linklist
5. For the COPY function only, invoke SIBBATCH, ADRDSSU, or FDRSNAP to perform the PIT copy
6. DEQ and CLOSE the HSC CDS.
7. For the COPY function only, if the PIT copy is not successful, re-WRITE the second 4K block back to the Primary CDS to restore the last backup date and time to its original value

How do I prevent a SnapShot target data set from being allocated when running the PITSNP sample JCL using the TEST function? Either comment out or dummy the OUTSNAP DD in the sample JCL, or use the PITSNP2 and PITSNPI2 members to dynamically allocate the target data set. Since the TEST function does not invoke the PIT copy program (SIBBATCH in this case) the target data set is never allocated.

SLUPCOPY Return Codes

SLUPCOPY return codes are described in [TABLE B-1](#).

TABLE B-1 SLUPCOPY Return Codes

0	Normal completion
4	Reserved (not currently issued)
8	JCL PARM= validation errors
12	Logic errors, data value errors, no match errors
16	IBM service failures
20	Operator requested abort of Point-In-Time copy

SLUPCOPY Problem Reporting, Determination, and Resolution

Problem Reporting Procedure

Report SLUPCOPY problems and send all required SLUPCOPY output and the SYSMDUMP data set to StorageTek Support.

Common Problem Symptoms and Remedies

DFSMSdss SnapShot Problem Symptoms and Remedies

- ? Message ADR472E with Reason Code 08 indicating that DFSMSdss was unable to select a target volume:
 - Reason Code 08 indicates that the target data set name is a duplicate. Change the target data set name or use the REPLACE keyword, but if REPLACE is used, be sure the correct target data set name is specified to avoid overlaying the wrong data set.
- ? Message ADR918I with Return Code 5 plus message ADR938E indicating that fast replication could not be used, or message ADR918I with Return Code 3 and QFRVOLS Reason Code C8 plus message ADR938E indicating that fast replication could not be used:
 - ? Perform the procedure in [“Verify that the SnapShot and SVAA Libraries are in the System Linklist.” on page 13](#) to search for the SIBFVP and SIBLLAPI modules.
 - ? If both modules are found in the system linklist, issue the following command to determine if SVAA is initialized:

```
D GRS, RES= (SYSZSVAA, *)
```

 - ? If a NO REQUESTORS FOR RESOURCE SYSZSVAA * response is received, the problem is that SVAA is not initialized. Perform the procedure in [“Initialize SVAA:” on page 13](#), then rerun the PIT copy.
 - ? If the response indicates that SVAA is active, do the following:
 1. Issue a C ANTMAIN command to restart the ANTMAIN address space. The ANTMAIN address space only needs to be restarted once after the SnapShot and SVAA libraries have been dynamically added to the system linklist.
 2. An ANTM6001I SNAPSHOT WORKING SPACE DATASETS BEING REFRESHED message should be issued during the restart. This may be followed by an ANTM6002W ERROR REFRESHING SNAPSHOT WORKING SPACE DATASETS - RC=nnnn REAS=n message. The ANTM6002W message can be ignored because Concurrent Copy is strongly discouraged.
 3. Rerun the PIT copy.
 - ? If both modules are not found in the system linklist, perform the procedure in [“Dynamically add the SnapShot and SVAA Libraries to the System Linklist:” on page 13](#), next perform [“Initialize SVAA:” on page 13](#), then rerun the PIT copy.

- Message ADR735W with Reason Code 14 and SDM diagnostic information 17A70000-00000000:

SnapShot and SVAA libraries are not in the system linklist. Perform the procedure in [“Dynamically add the SnapShot and SVAA Libraries to the System Linklist:”](#) on page 13, next perform [“Initialize SVAA:”](#) on page 13, then rerun the PIT copy.

Region Problem Symptoms and Remedies

Increase the REGION size (4 megabytes should be sufficient) on the SLUPCOPY step if the following messages are received (the module name will reflect the choice of PIT copy method):

```
IEW4000I FETCH FOR MODULE ADRDSSU FROM DDNAME -LNKLST- FAILED  
BECAUSE INSUFFICIENT STORAGE WAS AVAILABLE.  
CSV031I LIBRARY ACCESS FAILED FOR MODULE ADRDSSU , RETURN CODE 24,  
REASON CODE 26080021, DDNAME *LNKLST*  
SLS7060E ADRDSSU LOAD FAILED. R1=00000106 R15=0000000C
```

Advanced Diagnostic Techniques

- ⌘ If SLUPCOPY issues an error message but no abend, consider a rerun of SLUPCOPY with the AB option specified to:
 - ⌘ Generate a User 555 abend and a machine-readable dump (an undummied SYSMDUMP DD must be present) for an eligible error conditions (see “AB Option” on page 161).
 - ⌘ Generate a Vital Diagnostic Information report.
- ⌘ To prevent the possibility of a “hanging RESERVE” (a RESERVE without a corresponding DEQ) SLUPCOPY attempts to DEQ and CLOSE the Primary CDS when an eligible non-abend error condition occurs (see “AB Option” on page 161). For abends other than the User 555, the ESTAE recovery routine in SLUPCOPY always attempts to DEQ and CLOSE the Primary CDS before control is returned to the operating system. If these attempts fail, the operating system itself should free these resources:
 - ⌘ Per *MVS Programming: Authorized Assembler Services Reference*, under the “Restrictions” section for RESERVE, the operating system should DEQ the Primary CDS when the SLUPCOPY task ends.
 - ⌘ Per *MVS Programming: Assembler Services Guide* under the “Freeing of Virtual Storage” section in Chapter 11, the operating system should CLOSE the Primary CDS when the SLUPCOPY task ends.

AB Option

If the AB option is specified, the occurrence of any of the following error conditions causes message SLS7112I to be issued, followed by a User 555 abend:

```
SLS7005E LOGIC ERROR - INVALID FUNCTION
SLS7006E CVTJESCT ADDRESS IS ZERO
SLS7007E JESSSCT ADDRESS IS ZERO
SLS7008E SUBSYSTEM ssss NOT ACTIVE
SLS7009E ASCB NOT FOUND
SLS7012E DCV ADDRESS IS ZERO
SLS7013E DCV PRIMARY INFO ADDRESS IS ZERO
SLS7014E JCL CDS NAME DOES NOT MATCH PRIMARY CDS NAME
SLS7016E QNAME IS BLANK OR BINARY ZEROS
SLS7018E LVT ADDRESS IS ZERO
SLS7020E JCL CDS NAME DOES NOT MATCH DHB CDS NAME
SLS7022E DEB ADDRESS IS ZERO
SLS7023E UCB ADDRESS IS ZERO
SLS7024E SLSCNTL DD IS DUMMIED
SLS7029E SUBSYSTEM ASID IS ZERO
SLS7035E POINT-IN-TIME COPY INVALID
SLS7050E ESTAE FAILED. R15=XXXXXXXX
SLS7051E RDJFCB FAILED. R15=XXXXXXXX
SLS7052E LOCASCB FAILED. R15=XXXXXXXX
SLS7053E ATTACH FAILED. R15=XXXXXXXX
SLS7054E OPEN FAILED. R15=XXXXXXXX
SLS7055E RESERVE FAILED. R1=XXXXXXXX R15=XXXXXXXX
SLS7056E CDS DHB READ FAILED. R15=XXXXXXXX
SLS7057E MAINLINE DEQ FAILED. R1=XXXXXXXX R15=XXXXXXXX
SLS7058E DETACH FAILED. R15=XXXXXXXX
SLS7059E MAINLINE CLOSE FAILED. R15=XXXXXXXX
SLS7060E ADRDSSU LOAD FAILED. R1=XXXXXXXX R15=XXXXXXXX
SLS7061E FDRSNAP LOAD FAILED. R1=XXXXXXXX R15=XXXXXXXX
SLS7062E SIBBATCH LOAD FAILED. R1=XXXXXXXX R15=XXXXXXXX
SLS7063E UNABLE TO ACQUIRE RESERVE
SLS7101E LVT ADDRESS DOES NOT POINT TO AN LVT
SLS7103E ASCB ADDRESS FROM HSC LVT IS ZERO
SLS7105E DPV EYECATCHER DOES NOT MATCH
SLS7110E MISSING DD: ddddddd
SLS7150E CDS DPV READ FAILED. R15=XXXXXXXX
SLS7151E CDS DPV WRITE FAILED. R15=XXXXXXXX
SLS7152E CDS DPV RESTORE FAILED. R15=XXXXXXXX
```

Vital Diagnostic Information

If the AB option is specified, and any of the preceding error conditions occurs, a Vital Diagnostic Information report is output as part of the SLUPCOPY output:

```
*****
* SLUPCOPY VERSION 6.20   COPYRIGHT 2006-2007 StorageTek, INC. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED   VITAL DIAGNOSTIC INFO *
*   RUN DATE= 03/26/07  RUN TIME= 14:45:38                                     *
*
* SYSTEM NAME= XXXX JES NAME= JES2   CVT PRODN= SP7.0.5  FMID= HBB7708  DFAR= 03010500  FT14= FF7F737F  FT56= A0300000 *
* LPAR NAME=   JES TYPE= JES2   ECVT PNAM= z/OS   VRM= 010500   PSEQ= 01010500   *
* VM NAME= XXXXXMVS   PROC= P302A   CPID= FF0XXXXX2084   *
* SUBSYSTEM NAME= HSCX  LVT ADDR= 433B1000  SSCT ADDR= 00963124  SSVT= 433D40C0  SUSE= 433B1000  SUS2= 2445D4C7  FLG1= 40000000 *
*
*****
```

For a SLS7008E error, the HSC subsystem information will be blank. This is normal.

Required Diagnostic Information

All of the following information is required before a SLUPCOPY problem can be diagnosed.

- ? All SLUPCOPY output
 - ? JES log
 - ? JCL and substitution messages
 - ? Allocation/deallocation messages
 - ? SYSPRINT/SYSTEM output
 - ? Vital Diagnostic Information report
 - ? System Name
 - ? LPAR Name (Blank if z/OS is running as a guest under z/VM)
 - ? VM Name (Non-blank if z/OS running as a guest under z/VM)
 - ? Operating System Type (includes Product name, FMID)
 - ? Operating System Release Level
 - ? JES Name and Type (JES2 or JES3)
 - ? DFSMS release level and feature bytes
 - ? HSC subsystem information
- ? The SLUPCOPY SYSDUMP data set
- ? The SYSLOG listing from 5 minutes before to 5 minutes after the problem occurred

Sample Output

The following sections show the output from runs of SLUPCOPY.

Example 1 - Successful SnapShot PIT Copy

```

J E S 2   J O B   L O G   --   S Y S T E M   X X X X   --   N O D E   X X X X X X X X

13.01.25 JOB07746 ---- THURSDAY, 29 MAR 2007 ----
13.01.25 JOB07746 IRR010I USERID XXXX      IS ASSIGNED TO THIS JOB.
13.01.25 JOB07746 ICH70001I XXXX      LAST ACCESS AT 12:05:57 ON THURSDAY, MARCH 29, 2007
13.01.25 JOB07746 $HASP373 XXXXPSNP STARTED - INIT AA      - CLASS A - SYS XXXX
13.01.26 JOB07746 IEF403I XXXXPSNP - STARTED - TIME=13.01.26
13.01.31 JOB07746 SLS7100I SLUPCOPY VERSION 6.20 PROCESSING BEGINS
13.01.31 JOB07746 SLS7028I HSC SUBSYSTEM NAME = HSCX
13.01.31 JOB07746 SLS7028I COPY FUNCTION IS IN EFFECT
13.01.31 JOB07746 SLS7028I SNAPSHOT METHOD IS IN EFFECT
13.01.31 JOB07746 SLS7028I RESERVE RETRY WTOR OPTION IS ENABLED
13.01.31 JOB07746 SLS7070I READ JFCB SUCCESSFUL FOR SLSCNTL DD
13.01.31 JOB07746 SLS7010I SSCVT LOCATED FOR SUBSYSTEM HSCX
13.01.31 JOB07746 SLS7011I ASCB FOR HSC JOB NAME HSCX      HAS ASID 001D
13.01.31 JOB07746 SLS7102I HSC QNAME = HSCXLSQN
13.01.31 JOB07746 SLS7025I PRIMARY CDS NAME = XXXX.SOS610.SLSCNTL
13.01.31 JOB07746 SLS7015I JCL CDS NAME MATCHES PRIMARY CDS NAME
13.01.31 JOB07746 SLS7071I OPEN SUCCESSFUL FOR SLSCNTL DD
13.01.31 JOB07746 SLS7104I UCB LOCATED SUCCESSFULLY
13.01.31 JOB07746 SLS7072I RESERVE SUCCESSFUL FOR SLSCNTL DD
13.01.31 JOB07746 SLS7073I CDS DHB READ SUCCESSFUL
13.01.31 JOB07746 SLS7021I JCL CDS NAME MATCHES DHB CDS NAME
13.01.31 JOB07746 SLS7170I CDS DPV READ SUCCESSFUL
13.01.31 JOB07746 SLS7106I ORIGINAL LAST BACKUP DATE AND TIME = 2007032815:08:35
13.01.31 JOB07746 SLS7171I CDS DPV WRITE SUCCESSFUL
13.01.31 JOB07746 SLS7107I UPDATED LAST BACKUP DATE AND TIME = 2007032913:01:31
13.01.31 JOB07746 SLS7074I ATTACH SUCCESSFUL
13.01.37 JOB07746 SLS7075I TCB USER CC=0000, SYSTEM CC=0000
13.01.37 JOB07746 SLS7076I DETACH SUCCESSFUL
13.01.37 JOB07746 SLS7077I MAINLINE DEQ SUCCESSFUL FOR SLSCNTL DD
13.01.37 JOB07746 SLS7078I MAINLINE CLOSE SUCCESSFUL FOR SLSCNTL DD
13.01.37 JOB07746 SLS7031I POINT-IN-TIME COPY SUCCESSFUL
13.01.37 JOB07746 SLS7111I SLUPCOPY VERSION 6.20 PROCESSING ENDS
13.01.38 JOB07746 -                               SYSTEM RELEASE: SP7.0.5 HBB7708
13.01.38 JOB07746 -                               --TIMINGS (MINS.)--                ---PAGING COUNTS---
13.01.38 JOB07746 -JOBNAME  STEPNAME  PROCSTEP  RC  EXCP  CPU  SRB  CLOCK  SERV  PG  PAGE  SWAP  VIO
SWAPS
13.01.38 JOB07746 -XXXXPSNP COPY                00   627   .00   .00   .2  2675  0    0    0
0      0
13.01.38 JOB07746 IEF404I XXXXPSNP - ENDED - TIME=13.01.38
13.01.38 JOB07746 -XXXXPSNP ENDED.  NAME-XXXXXXXXX          TOTAL CPU TIME=   .00  TOTAL ELAPSED TIME=   .2
13.01.38 JOB07746 $HASP395 XXXXPSNP ENDED

0----- JES2 JOB STATISTICS -----
- 29 MAR 2007 JOB EXECUTION DATE
-          23 CARDS READ
-          143 SYSOUT PRINT RECORDS
-           0 SYSOUT PUNCH RECORDS
-           8 SYSOUT SPOOL KBYTES
-          0.20 MINUTES EXECUTION TIME

```

```

XXXXPSNP JOB (XXXXXX),XXXXXXXX,                JOB07746
// CLASS=A,
// MSGCLASS=1
// *
// *-----*//
// * SNAPSHOT PIT COPY
// *-----*//
2 //COPY EXEC PGM=SLUPCOPY,REGION=4M,
// PARM='HSCX,COPY,SNP,OPT(RR) '
3 //STEPLIB DD DSN=XXXX.LINKLIB,DISP=SHR
4 //SLSCNTL DD DSN=XXXX.SOS610.SLSCNTL,DISP=SHR
5 //SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
6 //SYSTEM DD SYSOUT=*
// *TRANS DD DSN=HSC.SACLINK,DISP=SHR
7 //SYSDUMP DD DSN=XXXX.SOS610.SYSDUMP,DISP=(,DELETE,CATLG),
// UNIT=SYSALLDA,SPACE=(CYL,100,RLSE),VOL=SER=SW8D12
8 //OUTSNAP DD DSN=XXXX.SOS610.SNAPPED,
// LIKE=XXXX.SOS610.SLSCNTL,DISP=(,CATLG,DELETE),
// VOL=SER=SW8D12,UNIT=SYSALLDA,SPACE=(CYL,25)
9 //SYSIN DD *
ICH70001I XXXX LAST ACCESS AT 12:05:57 ON THURSDAY, MARCH 29, 2007
IEF236I ALLOC. FOR XXXXPSNP COPY
IEF237I 3EC4 ALLOCATED TO STEPLIB
IEF237I 8A45 ALLOCATED TO SLSCNTL
IEF237I JES2 ALLOCATED TO SYSPRINT
IEF237I JES2 ALLOCATED TO SYSTEM
IGD100I 8D12 ALLOCATED TO DDNAME SYSDUMP DATACLAS ( )
IGD100I 8D12 ALLOCATED TO DDNAME OUTSNAP DATACLAS ( )
IEF237I JES2 ALLOCATED TO SYSIN
IEF237I 3D5C ALLOCATED TO SYS00001
IEF285I SYS1.PARMLIB KEPT
IEF285I VOL SER NOS= XXXXRS.
IEF237I 3D5C ALLOCATED TO SYS00002
IEF285I SYS1.PARMLIB KEPT
IEF285I VOL SER NOS= XXXXRS.
IEF237I 3D5C ALLOCATED TO SYS00003
IEF237I 8800 ALLOCATED TO SYS00004
IEF285I SYS1.PARMLIB KEPT
IEF285I VOL SER NOS= XXXXRS.
IEF237I 8A45 ALLOCATED TO SYS00005
IEF237I 8D12 ALLOCATED TO SYS00006
IEF237I 8D12 ALLOCATED TO SYS00007
IEF285I SYS07088.T130135.RA000.XXXXPSNP.R0100577 KEPT
IEF285I VOL SER NOS= SW8A45.
IEF285I SYS07088.T130135.RA000.XXXXPSNP.R0100578 KEPT
IEF285I VOL SER NOS= SW8D12.
IEF285I SYS07088.T130136.RA000.XXXXPSNP.R0100579 KEPT
IEF285I VOL SER NOS= SW8D12.
IEF285I SYS07088.T130133.RA000.XXXXPSNP.R0100576 KEPT
IEF285I VOL SER NOS= SW8800.
IEF142I XXXXPSNP COPY - STEP WAS EXECUTED - COND CODE 0000
IEF285I XXXX.LINKLIB KEPT
IEF285I VOL SER NOS= TSO020.
IEF285I XXXX.SOS610.SLSCNTL KEPT
IEF285I VOL SER NOS= SW8A45.
IEF285I XXXX.XXXXPSNP.JOB07746.D0000102.? SYSOUT
IEF285I XXXX.XXXXPSNP.JOB07746.D0000103.? SYSOUT
IEF285I XXXX.SOS610.SYSDUMP DELETED
IEF285I VOL SER NOS= SW8D12.
IEF285I XXXX.SOS610.SNAPPED CATALOGED
IEF285I VOL SER NOS= SW8D12.
IEF285I XXXX.XXXXPSNP.JOB07746.D0000101.? SYSIN
*****
* DDNAME DEVICE DEVICE EXCP *
* CLASS ADDRESS COUNT *
*-----*-----*-----*
* STEPLIB DASD 3EC4 00000002 *
* SLSCNTL DASD 8A45 00000003 *
* SYSPRINT JES2 00000000 *
* SYSTEM JES2 00000000 *
* SYSDUMP DASD 8D12 00000000 *
* OUTSNAP DASD 8D12 00000000 *
* SYSIN JES2 00000000 *
* SYS00001 DASD 3D5C 00000000 *
* SYS00002 DASD 3D5C 00000000 *
* SYS00003 DASD 3D5C 00000002 *
* SYS00005 DASD 8A45 00000000 *
* SYS00006 DASD 8D12 00000000 *
* SYS00007 DASD 8D12 00000000 *
* SYS00004 DASD 8800 00000000 *
*****

```

```

F373I STEP/COPY /START 2007088.1301
IEF374I STEP/COPY /STOP 2007088.1301 CPU 0MIN 00.11SEC SRB 0MIN 00.01SEC VIRT 680K SYS
324K EXT 2716K SYS 7536K
IEF375I JOB/XXXXPSNP/START 2007088.1301
IEF376I JOB/XXXXPSNP/STOP 2007088.1301 CPU 0MIN 00.11SEC SRB 0MIN 00.01SEC
1SIB0715I SVAA 3.1.0 (SIBBATCH) invoked on Thu Mar 29, 2007 13:01:33.
SIB0700I 13:01:33 /*****/
SIB0700I 13:01:33 /* XXXX -- SIBSTK00 */
SIB0700I 13:01:33 /*****/
SIB0700I 13:01:33 SET ECAMDEVICE(8800)

SIB0700I 13:01:34 SET SSNAME(SVAA)

SIB0715I SVAA 3.1.0 (SIBBATCH) invoked on Thu Mar 29, 2007 13:01:34.
SIB0700I 13:01:34 SNAP DATASET (INDDNAME(SLSCNTL) OUTDDNAME(OUTSNAP) -
SIB0700I 13:01:34 HOSTCOPYMODE(SHARED) REPLACE(YES) TOLENQF(Y))
SIB4617I 13:01:37 SnapShot completed, rc=0.

```

Example 2 - Successful DFSMSDss FlashCopy PIT Copy on a JES3 System

```

//HSCFLASH JOB (XXXXXXX,XXXXXXX,XXXXXXX) , *
//          MSGCLASS=T,REGION=OM, *
//          MSGLEVEL=(1,1),NOTIFY=XXXXXXX
//*MAIN CLASS=D22
/*****
//***** SLUPCOPY      CDS FLASHCOPY
/*****
//DFDSS EXEC PGM=SLUPCOPY,REGION=4M,
// PARM='HSC0,COPY,DSS,OPT(AB)'
//STEPLIB DD DISP=SHR,DSN=DMMBASE.SLUPCOPY.LINKLIB
//SLSCNTL DD DISP=SHR,DSN=XXXXHSC.SLS.DBASEPRM
//SLSCNTL2 DD DISP=SHR,DSN=XXXXHSC.SLS.DBASESHD
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//SYSDUMP DD DSN=XXXXXXX.SLUPCOPY.SYSDUMP,DISP=(,CATLG),
//          SPACE=(CYL,(100,100),RLSE),UNIT=SYSALLDA
//SYSIN DD *
IAT6140 JOB ORIGIN FROM GROUP=ANYLOCAL, DSP=IR , DEVICE=INTRDR , 0000
13:06:00 ---- IAT6853 THE CURRENT DATE IS WEDNESDAY, 24 JAN 2007 ----
IRRO10I USERID XXXXXXX IS ASSIGNED TO THIS JOB.
13:06:01 IAT4401 LOCATE FOR STEP=DFDSS DD=STEPLIB DSN=DMMBASE.SLUPCOPY.LINKLIB
13:06:01 IAT4402 STORCLAS=BASE, MGMTCLAS=STANDARD
13:06:01 IAT4401 LOCATE FOR STEP=DFDSS DD=SLSCNTL DSN=XXXXHSC.SLS.DBASEPRM
13:06:01 IAT4402 STORCLAS=SCHSCDS, MGMTCLAS=MCRAPP
13:06:01 IAT4401 LOCATE FOR STEP=DFDSS DD=SLSCNTL2 DSN=XXXXHSC.SLS.DBASESHD
13:06:01 IAT4402 STORCLAS=SCHSCDS, MGMTCLAS=MCRAPP
13:06:01 IAT6312 THE FOLLOWING 000001 MESSAGES MAY BE LOGGED OUT OF SEQUENCE
13:06:01 ICH70001I XXXXXXX LAST ACCESS AT 12:48:58 ON WEDNESDAY, JANUARY 24, 2007
13:06:01 IAT2000 JOB HSCFLASH (JOB23890) SELECTED D22 GRP=DEDICATE
13:06:01 ICH70001I XXXXXXX LAST ACCESS AT 13:06:01 ON WEDNESDAY, JANUARY 24, 2007
13:06:01 IEF403I HSCFLASH - STARTED - TIME=13.06.01
13:06:01 SLS7100I SLUPCOPY VERSION X.XX PROCESSING BEGINS
13:06:01 SLS7028I HSC SUBSYSTEM NAME = HSC0
13:06:01 SLS7028I COPY FUNCTION IS IN EFFECT
13:06:01 SLS7028I DFSMSDSS METHOD IS IN EFFECT
13:06:01 SLS7028I ABEND OPTION IS ENABLED
13:06:01 SLS7070I READ JFCB SUCCESSFUL FOR SLSCNTL DD
13:06:01 SLS7010I SSCVT LOCATED FOR SUBSYSTEM HSC0
13:06:01 SLS7011I ASCB FOR HSC JOB NAME HSCD22 HAS ASID 0086
13:06:01 SLS7102I HSC QNAME = STKALSQN
13:06:01 SLS7025I PRIMARY CDS NAME= XXXXHSC.SLS.DBASEPRM
13:06:01 SLS7015I JCL CDS NAME MATCHES PRIMARY CDS NAME
13:06:01 SLS7071I OPEN SUCCESSFUL FOR SLSCNTL DD
13:06:01 SLS7072I RESERVE SUCCESSFUL FOR SLSCNTL DD
13:06:01 SLS7073I READ SUCCESSFUL FOR SLSCNTL DD
13:06:01 SLS7021I JCL CDS NAME MATCHES DHB CDS NAME
13:06:01 SLS7074I ATTACH SUCCESSFUL
13:06:02 SLS7075I TCB USER CC=0000, SYSTEM CC=0000
13:06:02 SLS7076I DETACH SUCCESSFUL
13:06:02 SLS7077I MAINLINE DEQ SUCCESSFUL FOR SLSCNTL DD
13:06:02 SLS7078I MAINLINE CLOSE SUCCESSFUL FOR SLSCNTL DD
13:06:02 SLS7031I POINT-IN-TIME COPY SUCCESSFUL
13:06:02 SLS7111I SLUPCOPY VERSION X.XX PROCESSING ENDS
13:06:02 IEF404I HSCFLASH - ENDED - TIME=13.06.02
//HSCFLASH JOB (XXXXXXX,XXXXXXX,XXXXXXX) , *
//          MSGCLASS=T,REGION=OM, *
//          MSGLEVEL=(1,1),NOTIFY=XXXXXXX
//*MAIN CLASS=D22
/*****
//***** SLUPCOPY      CDS FLASHCOPY
/*****
//DFDSS EXEC PGM=SLUPCOPY,REGION=4M,
// PARM='HSC0,COPY,DSS,OPT(AB)'
//STEPLIB DD DISP=SHR,DSN=DMMBASE.SLUPCOPY.LINKLIB
//SLSCNTL DD DISP=SHR,DSN=XXXXHSC.SLS.DBASEPRM
//SLSCNTL2 DD DISP=SHR,DSN=XXXXHSC.SLS.DBASESHD
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//SYSDUMP DD DSN=XXXXXXX.SLUPCOPY.SYSDUMP,DISP=(,CATLG),
//          SPACE=(CYL,(100,100),RLSE),UNIT=SYSALLDA
//SYSIN DD *
/*
1 //HSCFLASH JOB (XXXXXXX,XXXXXXX,XXXXXXX) , *
//          MSGCLASS=T,REGION=OM, *
//          MSGLEVEL=(1,1),NOTIFY=XXXXXXX
//*MAIN CLASS=D22

```

```

/*****
//***** SLUPCOPY CDS FLASHCOPY
/*****
2 //DFDSS EXEC PGM=SLUPCOPY,REGION=4M,
// PARM='HSC0,COPY,DSS,OPT(AB) '
3 //STEPLIB DD DISP=SHR,DSN=DMMBASE.SLUPCOPY.LINKLIB
4 //SLSCNTL DD DISP=SHR,DSN=XXXXHSC.SLS.DBASEPRM
5 //SLSCNTL2 DD DISP=SHR,DSN=XXXXHSC.SLS.DBASESHD
6 //SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
7 //SYSDUMP DD DSN=XXXXXXX.SLUPCOPY.SYSDUMP,DISP=(,CATLG),
// SPACE=(CYL,(100,100),RLSE),UNIT=SYSALLDA
8 //SYSIN DD *
ICH70001I XXXXXX LAST ACCESS AT 13:06:01 ON WEDNESDAY, JANUARY 24, 2007
IEF236I ALLOC. FOR HSCFLASH DFDSS
IGD103I SMS ALLOCATED TO DDNAME STEPLIB
IGD103I SMS ALLOCATED TO DDNAME SLSCNTL
IGD103I SMS ALLOCATED TO DDNAME SLSCNTL2
IEF237I JES3 ALLOCATED TO SYSPRINT
IGD101I SMS ALLOCATED TO DDNAME (SYSDUMP)
DSN (XXXXXXX.SLUPCOPY.SYSDUMP )
STORCLAS (SCSTD) MGMTCLAS (MCMINBU) DATACLAS ( )
VOL SER NOS= SIP037
IEF237I JES3 ALLOCATED TO SYSIN
SLS7100I SLUPCOPY VERSION X.XX PROCESSING BEGINS
SLS7028I HSC SUBSYSTEM NAME = HSC0
SLS7028I COPY FUNCTION IS IN EFFECT
SLS7028I DFSMSDSS METHOD IS IN EFFECT
SLS7028I ABEND OPTION IS ENABLED
SLS7070I READ JFCB SUCCESSFUL FOR SLSCNTL DD
SLS7010I SSCVT LOCATED FOR SUBSYSTEM HSC0
SLS7011I ASCB FOR HSC JOB NAME HSCD22 HAS ASID 0086
SLS7102I HSC QNAME = STKALSON
SLS7025I PRIMARY CDS NAME= XXXXHSC.SLS.DBASEPRM
SLS7015I JCL CDS NAME MATCHES PRIMARY CDS NAME
SLS7071I OPEN SUCCESSFUL FOR SLSCNTL DD
SLS7072I RESERVE SUCCESSFUL FOR SLSCNTL DD
SLS7073I READ SUCCESSFUL FOR SLSCNTL DD
SLS7021I JCL CDS NAME MATCHES DHB CDS NAME
SLS7074I ATTACH SUCCESSFUL
IEF237I 3679 ALLOCATED TO SYS00001
IGD101I SMS ALLOCATED TO DDNAME (SYS00002)
DSN (SYS07024.T130601.RA000.HSCFLASH.R0152617 )
STORCLAS (SCTEMP) MGMTCLAS ( ) DATACLAS ( )
VOL SER NOS= SIP023
IGD101I SMS ALLOCATED TO DDNAME (SYS00003)
DSN (SYS07024.T130601.RA000.HSCFLASH.R0152618 )
STORCLAS (SCTEMP) MGMTCLAS ( ) DATACLAS ( )
VOL SER NOS= SIP024
IGD101I SMS ALLOCATED TO DDNAME (SYS00004)
DSN (SYS07024.T130601.RA000.HSCFLASH.R0152619 )
STORCLAS (SCTEMP) MGMTCLAS ( ) DATACLAS ( )
VOL SER NOS= SIP036
IGD101I SMS ALLOCATED TO DDNAME (SYS00005)
DSN (SYS07024.T130601.RA000.HSCFLASH.R0152620 )
STORCLAS (SCTEMP) MGMTCLAS ( ) DATACLAS ( )
VOL SER NOS= D2PR02
IGD101I SMS ALLOCATED TO DDNAME (SYS00006)
DSN (SYS07024.T130601.RA000.HSCFLASH.R0152621 )
STORCLAS (SCTEMP) MGMTCLAS ( ) DATACLAS ( )
VOL SER NOS= SIP016
IGD101I SMS ALLOCATED TO DDNAME (SYS00007)
DSN (SYS07024.T130601.RA000.HSCFLASH.R0152622 )
STORCLAS (SCTEMP) MGMTCLAS ( ) DATACLAS ( )
VOL SER NOS= SIP005
IGD101I SMS ALLOCATED TO DDNAME (SYS00008)
DSN (SYS07024.T130601.RA000.HSCFLASH.R0152623 )
STORCLAS (SCTEMP) MGMTCLAS ( ) DATACLAS ( )
VOL SER NOS= SIP002
IGD101I SMS ALLOCATED TO DDNAME (SYS00009)
DSN (SYS07024.T130601.RA000.HSCFLASH.R0152624 )
STORCLAS (SCTEMP) MGMTCLAS ( ) DATACLAS ( )
VOL SER NOS= SIP027
IGD101I SMS ALLOCATED TO DDNAME (SYS00010)
DSN (SYS07024.T130601.RA000.HSCFLASH.R0152625 )
STORCLAS (SCTEMP) MGMTCLAS ( ) DATACLAS ( )
VOL SER NOS= SIP032
IGD101I SMS ALLOCATED TO DDNAME (SYS00011)
DSN (SYS07024.T130601.RA000.HSCFLASH.R0152626 )
STORCLAS (SCTEMP) MGMTCLAS ( ) DATACLAS ( )
VOL SER NOS= SIP025

```



```

AGE 0001      5695-DF175  DFSMSDSS V1R06.0 DATA SET SERVICES      2007.024 13:06
- COPY
  DATASET (INCLUDE (
                XXXXHSC.SLS.DBASEPRM
                XXXXHSC.SLS.DBASESHD
                )
            )
  RENUNC (
            (XXXXHSC.SLS.DBASEPRM,XXXXHSC.SLS.DBASEPRM.PER)
            (XXXXHSC.SLS.DBASESHD,XXXXHSC.SLS.DBASESHD.PER)
            )
  FASTREPLICATION (REQUIRED)
  CANCELERROR
  SHARE
  TOL (ENQF)
  TGTALLO (CYL)
  OUTDYNAM (XX3679)
  CATALOG
ADR101I (R/I)-RI01 (01), TASKID 001 HAS BEEN ASSIGNED TO COMMAND 'COPY '
ADR109I (R/I)-RI01 (01), 2007.024 13:06:01 INITIAL SCAN OF USER CONTROL STATEMENTS COMPLETED.
ADR016I (001)-PRIME (01), RACF LOGGING OPTION IN EFFECT FOR THIS TASK
OADR006I (001)-STEND (01), 2007.024 13:06:01 EXECUTION BEGINS
OADR711I (001)-NEWDS (01), DATA SET XXXXHSC.SLS.DBASEPRM HAS BEEN ALLOCATED WITH NEWNAME XXXXHSC.SLS.DBASEPRM.PER USING

STORCLAS
                SCHSCDS, NO DATACLAS, AND MGMTCLAS MCRAPP
OADR806I (001)-TOMI (01), DATA SET XXXXHSC.SLS.DBASEPRM COPIED USING A FAST REPLICATION FUNCTION
OADR711I (001)-NEWDS (01), DATA SET XXXXHSC.SLS.DBASESHD HAS BEEN ALLOCATED WITH NEWNAME XXXXHSC.SLS.DBASESHD.PER USING

STORCLAS
                SCHSCDS, NO DATACLAS, AND MGMTCLAS MCRAPP
OADR806I (001)-TOMI (01), DATA SET XXXXHSC.SLS.DBASESHD COPIED USING A FAST REPLICATION FUNCTION
OADR801I (001)-DDDS (01), DATA SET FILTERING IS COMPLETE. 2 OF 2 DATA SETS WERE SELECTED: 0 FAILED SERIALIZATION AND 0 FAILED

FOR
                OTHER REASONS.
OADR454I (001)-DDDS (02), THE FOLLOWING DATA SETS WERE SUCCESSFULLY PROCESSED
0
                XXXXHSC.SLS.DBASEPRM
0
                XXXXHSC.SLS.DBASESHD
OADR006I (001)-STEND (02), 2007.024 13:06:02 EXECUTION ENDS
OADR013I (001)-CLTSK (01), 2007.024 13:06:02 TASK COMPLETED WITH RETURN CODE 0000
OADR012I (SCH)-DSSU (01), 2007.024 13:06:02 DFSMSDSS PROCESSING COMPLETE. HIGHEST RETURN CODE IS 0000

```

Example 3 - Successful DFSMSDss SnapShot PIT Copy

```

JES2 JOB LOG -- SYSTEM XXXX -- NODE XXXXXXXX

13.02.47 JOB07747 ---- THURSDAY, 29 MAR 2007 ----
13.02.47 JOB07747 IRR010I USERID XXXX IS ASSIGNED TO THIS JOB.
13.02.48 JOB07747 ICH70001I XXXX LAST ACCESS AT 13:01:25 ON THURSDAY, MARCH 29, 2007
13.02.48 JOB07747 $HASP373 XXXXPDSS STARTED - INIT AA - CLASS A - SYS XXXX
13.02.48 JOB07747 IEF403I XXXXPDSS - STARTED - TIME=13.02.48
13.02.50 JOB07747 SLS7100I SLUPCOPY VERSION 6.20 PROCESSING BEGINS
13.02.50 JOB07747 SLS7028I HSC SUBSYSTEM NAME = HSCX
13.02.50 JOB07747 SLS7028I COPY FUNCTION IS IN EFFECT
13.02.50 JOB07747 SLS7028I DFSMSDSS METHOD IS IN EFFECT
13.02.50 JOB07747 SLS7028I PIT COPY WTOR OPTION IS ENABLED
13.02.50 JOB07747 SLS7028I ABEND OPTION IS ENABLED
13.02.50 JOB07747 SLS7028I RESERVE RETRY WTOR OPTION IS ENABLED
13.02.50 JOB07747 SLS7070I READ JPCB SUCCESSFUL FOR SLSCNTL DD
13.02.50 JOB07747 SLS7010I SSCVT LOCATED FOR SUBSYSTEM HSCX
13.02.50 JOB07747 SLS7011I ASCB FOR HSC JOB NAME HSCX HAS ASID 001D
13.02.50 JOB07747 SLS7102I HSC QNAME = HSCXLSQN
13.02.50 JOB07747 SLS7025I PRIMARY CDS NAME = XXXX.SOS610.SLSCNTL
13.02.50 JOB07747 SLS7015I JCL CDS NAME MATCHES PRIMARY CDS NAME
13.02.50 JOB07747 *0029 SLS7090A REPLY Y TO INITIATE POINT-IN-TIME COPY
13.02.53 JOB07747 R 29,Y
13.02.53 JOB07747 SLS7071I OPEN SUCCESSFUL FOR SLSCNTL DD
13.02.53 JOB07747 SLS7104I UCB LOCATED SUCCESSFULLY
13.02.53 JOB07747 SLS7072I RESERVE SUCCESSFUL FOR SLSCNTL DD
13.02.53 JOB07747 SLS7073I CDS DHB READ SUCCESSFUL
13.02.53 JOB07747 SLS7021I JCL CDS NAME MATCHES DHB CDS NAME
13.02.53 JOB07747 SLS7170I CDS DPV READ SUCCESSFUL
13.02.53 JOB07747 SLS7106I ORIGINAL LAST BACKUP DATE AND TIME = 2007032913:01:31
13.02.53 JOB07747 SLS7171I CDS DPV WRITE SUCCESSFUL
13.02.53 JOB07747 SLS7107I UPDATED LAST BACKUP DATE AND TIME = 2007032913:02:53
13.02.53 JOB07747 SLS7074I ATTACH SUCCESSFUL
13.03.10 JOB07747 SLS7075I TCB USER CC=0000, SYSTEM CC=0000
13.03.10 JOB07747 SLS7076I DETACH SUCCESSFUL
13.03.10 JOB07747 SLS7077I MAINLINE DEQ SUCCESSFUL FOR SLSCNTL DD
13.03.11 JOB07747 SLS7078I MAINLINE CLOSE SUCCESSFUL FOR SLSCNTL DD
13.03.11 JOB07747 SLS7031I POINT-IN-TIME COPY SUCCESSFUL
13.03.11 JOB07747 SLS7111I SLUPCOPY VERSION 6.20 PROCESSING ENDS
13.03.11 JOB07747 - SYSTEM RELEASE: SP7.0.5 HBB7708
13.03.11 JOB07747 - --TIMINGS (MINS.)-- ----PAGING COUNTS---
13.03.11 JOB07747 -JOBNAME STEPNAME PROCSTEP RC EXCP CPU SRB CLOCK SERV PG PAGE SWAP VIO SWAPS
13.03.11 JOB07747 -XXXXPDSS COPY 00 739 .00 .00 .3 3588 0 0 0 0 0
13.03.11 JOB07747 IEF404I XXXXPDSS - ENDED - TIME=13.03.11
13.03.11 JOB07747 -XXXXPDSS ENDED. NAME-XXXXXXXXX TOTAL CPU TIME= .00 TOTAL ELAPSED TIME= .3
13.03.11 JOB07747 $HASP395 XXXXPDSS ENDED
0----- JES2 JOB STATISTICS -----
- 29 MAR 2007 JOB EXECUTION DATE
- 27 CARDS READ
- 171 SYSOUT PRINT RECORDS
- 0 SYSOUT PUNCH RECORDS
- 11 SYSOUT SPOOL KBYTES
- 0.39 MINUTES EXECUTION TIME
1 //XXXXPDSS JOB (XXXXXX),XXXXXXXX, JOB07747
// CLASS=A,
// MSGCLASS=1
//*
//*-----*//
//* DSS PIT COPY
//*-----*//
2 //COPY EXEC PGM=SLUPCOPY,REGION=4M,
// PARM='HSCX,COPY,DSS,OPT(PC,AB,RR)'
3 //STEPLIB DD DSN=XXXX.LINKLIB,DISP=SHR
4 //SLSCNTL DD DSN=XXXX.SOS610.SLSCNTL,DISP=SHR
5 //SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
6 //SYSDUMP DD DSN=XXXX.SLUPCOPY.SYSDUMP,DISP=(,DELETE,CATLG),
// UNIT=SYSALLDA,SPACE=(CYL,100,RLSE),VOL=SER=SW8D12
7 //SYSIN DD *
ICH70001I XXXX LAST ACCESS AT 13:01:25 ON THURSDAY, MARCH 29, 2007
IEF236I ALLOC. FOR XXXXPDSS COPY
IEF237I 3EC4 ALLOCATED TO STEPLIB
IEF237I 8A45 ALLOCATED TO SLSCNTL
IEF237I JES2 ALLOCATED TO SYSPRINT
IGD100I 8D12 ALLOCATED TO DDNAME SYSDUMP DATACLAS ( )
IEF237I JES2 ALLOCATED TO SYSIN
IEF237I 8D12 ALLOCATED TO SYS00001
IGD100I 3EF1 ALLOCATED TO DDNAME SYS00002 DATACLAS ( )
IGD100I 3DAC ALLOCATED TO DDNAME SYS00003 DATACLAS ( )
IGD100I 3CF1 ALLOCATED TO DDNAME SYS00004 DATACLAS ( )
IGD100I 3DAC ALLOCATED TO DDNAME SYS00005 DATACLAS ( )
IGD100I 3DAC ALLOCATED TO DDNAME SYS00006 DATACLAS ( )

```

```

D100I 3EF1 ALLOCATED TO DDNAME SYS00007 DATACLAS (      )
IGD100I 3EF1 ALLOCATED TO DDNAME SYS00008 DATACLAS (      )
IGD100I 3EF1 ALLOCATED TO DDNAME SYS00009 DATACLAS (      )
IGD100I 3CF1 ALLOCATED TO DDNAME SYS00010 DATACLAS (      )
IGD100I 3CF1 ALLOCATED TO DDNAME SYS00011 DATACLAS (      )
IEF237I 8A45 ALLOCATED TO SYS00012
IEF285I  SYS07088.T130254.RA000.XXXXPDSS.R0100581  DELETED
IEF285I  VOL SER NOS= WORK08.
IEF285I  SYS07088.T130254.RA000.XXXXPDSS.R0100582  DELETED
IEF285I  VOL SER NOS= WORK02.
IEF285I  SYS07088.T130255.RA000.XXXXPDSS.R0100583  DELETED
IEF285I  VOL SER NOS= WORK01.
IEF285I  SYS07088.T130255.RA000.XXXXPDSS.R0100584  DELETED
IEF285I  VOL SER NOS= WORK02.
IEF285I  SYS07088.T130255.RA000.XXXXPDSS.R0100585  DELETED
IEF285I  VOL SER NOS= WORK02.
IEF285I  SYS07088.T130256.RA000.XXXXPDSS.R0100586  DELETED
IEF285I  VOL SER NOS= WORK08.
IEF285I  SYS07088.T130256.RA000.XXXXPDSS.R0100587  DELETED
IEF285I  VOL SER NOS= WORK08.
IEF285I  SYS07088.T130257.RA000.XXXXPDSS.R0100588  DELETED
IEF285I  VOL SER NOS= WORK08.
IEF285I  SYS07088.T130257.RA000.XXXXPDSS.R0100589  DELETED
IEF285I  VOL SER NOS= WORK01.
IEF285I  SYS07088.T130258.RA000.XXXXPDSS.R0100590  DELETED
IEF285I  VOL SER NOS= WORK01.
IEF285I  SYS07088.T130300.RA000.XXXXPDSS.R0100591  KEPT
IEF285I  VOL SER NOS= SW8A45.
IEF285I  SYS07088.T130253.RA000.XXXXPDSS.R0100580  KEPT
IEF285I  VOL SER NOS= SW8D12.
IEF142I XXXXPDSS COPY - STEP WAS EXECUTED - COND CODE 0000
IEF285I  XXXX.LINKLIB                                KEPT
IEF285I  VOL SER NOS= TSO020.
IEF285I  XXXX.SOS610.SLSCNTL                          KEPT
IEF285I  VOL SER NOS= SW8A45.
IEF285I  XXXX.XXXXPDSS.JOB07747.D0000102.?           SYSOUT
IEF285I  XXXX.SLUPCOPY.SYSMDUMP                       DELETED
IEF285I  VOL SER NOS= SW8D12.
IEF285I  XXXX.XXXXPDSS.JOB07747.D0000101.?           SYSIN
*****
*          DEVICE          DEVICE          EXCP          *
*          DDNAME         CLASS          ADDRESS         COUNT          *
*          -----          -          -          -          *
*          STEPLIB        DASD          3EC4          00000002        *
*          SLSCNTL        DASD          8A45          00000003        *
*          SYSPRINT       JES2          -             00000000        *
*          SYSMDUMP       DASD          8D12          00000000        *
*          SYSIN          JES2          -             00000000        *
*          SYS00002       DASD          3EF1          00000000        *
*          SYS00003       DASD          3DAC          00000000        *
*          SYS00004       DASD          3CF1          00000000        *
*          SYS00005       DASD          3DAC          00000000        *
*          SYS00006       DASD          3DAC          00000000        *
*          SYS00007       DASD          3EF1          00000000        *
*          SYS00008       DASD          3EF1          00000000        *
*          SYS00009       DASD          3EF1          00000000        *
*          SYS00010       DASD          3CF1          00000000        *
*          SYS00011       DASD          3CF1          00000000        *
*          SYS00012       DASD          8A45          00000003        *
*          SYS00001       DASD          8D12          00000003        *
*****
IEF373I STEP/COPY /START 2007088.1302
IEF374I STEP/COPY /STOP 2007088.1303 CPU  OMIN 00.15SEC SRB  OMIN 00.01SEC VIRT 1884K SYS  400K EXT  788K
SYS 7484K
IEF375I JOB/XXXXPDSS/START 2007088.1302
IEF376I JOB/XXXXPDSS/STOP 2007088.1303 CPU  OMIN 00.15SEC SRB  OMIN 00.01SEC
1PAGE 0001 5695-DF175 DFSMSDSS V1R05.0 DATA SET SERVICES 2007.088 13:02
- COPY
  DATASET(INCLUDE(XXXX.SOS610.SLSCNTL))
  RENUNC((XXXX.SOS610.SLSCNTL,
          XXXX.SOS610.DFSMSDSS))
FASTREPLICATION(REQUIRED)
CANCELERROR
SHARE
TOL(ENQF)
TGTTALOC(CYL)
OUTDYNAM(SW8D12)
CATALOG
ADR101I (R/I)-RI01 (01), TASKID 001 HAS BEEN ASSIGNED TO COMMAND 'COPY '
ADR109I (R/I)-RI01 (01), 2007.088 13:02:53 INITIAL SCAN OF USER CONTROL STATEMENTS COMPLETED.
ADR016I (001)-PRIME(01), RACF LOGGING OPTION IN EFFECT FOR THIS TASK
OADR006I (001)-STEND(01), 2007.088 13:02:54 EXECUTION BEGINS
OADR395I (001)-NEWDS(01), DATA SET XXXX.SOS610.SLSCNTL ALLOCATED WITH NEWNAME XXXX.SOS610.DFSMSDSS, ON VOLUME(S): SW8D12

```

```
0ADR806I (001)-TOMI (01), DATA SET XXXX.SOS610.SLSCNTL COPIED USING A FAST REPLICATION FUNCTION
0ADR465I (001)-CNVSM(01), DATA SET XXXX.SOS610.DFSMSDSS HAS BEEN CATALOGED IN CATALOG CATALOG.IVTSOCT1.TSOCAT
0ADR801I (001)-DDDS (01), DATA SET FILTERING IS COMPLETE. 1 OF 1 DATA SETS WERE SELECTED: 0 FAILED SERIALIZATION AND 0
FAILED FOR
                                OTHER REASONS.
0ADR454I (001)-DDDS (02), THE FOLLOWING DATA SETS WERE SUCCESSFULLY PROCESSED
0                                XXXX.SOS610.SLSCNTL
0ADR006I (001)-STEND(02), 2007.088 13:03:10 EXECUTION ENDS
0ADR013I (001)-CLTSK(01), 2007.088 13:03:10 TASK COMPLETED WITH RETURN CODE 0000
0ADR012I (SCH)-DSSU (01), 2007.088 13:03:10 DFSMSDSS PROCESSING COMPLETE. HIGHEST RETURN CODE IS 0000
```

Example 4 - Successful FDRSNAP PIT Copy

```

JES2 JOB LOG -- SYSTEM XXXX -- NODE XXXXXXXX

13.08.20 JOB07751 ---- THURSDAY, 29 MAR 2007 ----
13.08.20 JOB07751 IRR010I USERID XXXX IS ASSIGNED TO THIS JOB.
13.08.20 JOB07751 ICH70001I XXXX LAST ACCESS AT 13:06:20 ON THURSDAY, MARCH 29, 2007
13.08.20 JOB07751 $HASP373 XXXXPFDR STARTED - INIT AA - CLASS A - SYS XXXX
13.08.20 JOB07751 IEF403I XXXXPFDR - STARTED - TIME=13.08.20
13.08.22 JOB07751 SLS7100I SLUPCOPY VERSION 6.20 PROCESSING BEGINS
13.08.22 JOB07751 SLS7028I HSC SUBSYSTEM NAME = HSCX
13.08.22 JOB07751 SLS7028I COPY FUNCTION IS IN EFFECT
13.08.22 JOB07751 SLS7028I FDRSNAP METHOD IS IN EFFECT
13.08.22 JOB07751 SLS7028I RESERVE RETRY WTOR OPTION IS ENABLED
13.08.22 JOB07751 SLS7070I READ JFCB SUCCESSFUL FOR SLSCNTL DD
13.08.22 JOB07751 SLS7010I SSCVT LOCATED FOR SUBSYSTEM HSCX
13.08.22 JOB07751 SLS7011I ASCB FOR HSC JOB NAME HSCX HAS ASID 001D
13.08.22 JOB07751 SLS7102I HSC QNAME = HSCXLSQN
13.08.22 JOB07751 SLS7025I PRIMARY CDS NAME = XXXX.SOS610.SLSCNTL
13.08.22 JOB07751 SLS7015I JCL CDS NAME MATCHES PRIMARY CDS NAME
13.08.22 JOB07751 SLS7071I OPEN SUCCESSFUL FOR SLSCNTL DD
13.08.22 JOB07751 SLS7104I UCB LOCATED SUCCESSFULLY
13.08.22 JOB07751 SLS7072I RESERVE SUCCESSFUL FOR SLSCNTL DD
13.08.22 JOB07751 SLS7073I CDS DHB READ SUCCESSFUL
13.08.22 JOB07751 SLS7021I JCL CDS NAME MATCHES DHB CDS NAME
13.08.22 JOB07751 SLS7170I CDS DPV READ SUCCESSFUL
13.08.22 JOB07751 SLS7106I ORIGINAL LAST BACKUP DATE AND TIME = 2007032913:02:53
13.08.22 JOB07751 SLS7171I CDS DPV WRITE SUCCESSFUL
13.08.22 JOB07751 SLS7107I UPDATED LAST BACKUP DATE AND TIME = 2007032913:08:22
13.08.22 JOB07751 SLS7074I ATTACH SUCCESSFUL
13.08.23 JOB07751 SLS7075I TCB USER CC=0000, SYSTEM CC=0000
13.08.23 JOB07751 SLS7076I DETACH SUCCESSFUL
13.08.23 JOB07751 SLS7077I MAINLINE DEQ SUCCESSFUL FOR SLSCNTL DD
13.08.23 JOB07751 SLS7078I MAINLINE CLOSE SUCCESSFUL FOR SLSCNTL DD
13.08.23 JOB07751 SLS7031I POINT-IN-TIME COPY SUCCESSFUL
13.08.23 JOB07751 SLS7111I SLUPCOPY VERSION 6.20 PROCESSING ENDS
13.08.23 JOB07751 - SYSTEM RELEASE: SP7.0.5 HBB7708
13.08.23 JOB07751 - --TIMINGS (MINS.)-- ----PAGING COUNTS---
13.08.23 JOB07751 -JOBNAME STEPNAME PROCSTEP RC EXCP CPU SRB CLOCK SERV PG PAGE SWAP VIO SWAPS
13.08.23 JOB07751 -XXXXPFDR COPY 00 134 .00 .00 .0 808 0 0 0 0 0
13.08.23 JOB07751 IEF404I XXXXPFDR - ENDED - TIME=13.08.23
13.08.23 JOB07751 -XXXXPFDR ENDED. NAME-XXXXXXXXX TOTAL CPU TIME= .00 TOTAL ELAPSED TIME= .0
13.08.23 JOB07751 $HASP395 XXXXPFDR ENDED

0----- JES2 JOB STATISTICS -----
- 29 MAR 2007 JOB EXECUTION DATE
- 19 CARDS READ
- 125 SYSOUT PRINT RECORDS
- 0 SYSOUT PUNCH RECORDS
- 8 SYSOUT SPOOL KBYTES
- 0.05 MINUTES EXECUTION TIME
1 //XXXXPFDR JOB (XXXXXX),XXXXXXXX, JOB07751
// CLASS=A,
// MSGCLASS=1
//*
//*-----*//
//* FDRSNAP PIT COPY
//*-----*//
2 //COPY EXEC PGM=SLUPCOPY,REGION=4M,
// PARM='HSCX,COPY,FDR,OPT(RR)'
3 //STEPLIB DD DSN=XXXX.LINKLIB,DISP=SHR
4 //SLSCNTL DD DSN=XXXX.SOS610.SLSCNTL,DISP=SHR
5 //SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
6 //SYSMDUMP DD DSN=XXXX.SLUPCOPY.SYSMDUMP,DISP=(,DELETE,CATLG),
// UNIT=SYSALLDA,SPACE=(CYL,100,RLSE),VOL=SER=SW8D12
7 //TAPE1 DD DUMMY
8 //SYSIN DD *

ICH70001I XXXX LAST ACCESS AT 13:06:20 ON THURSDAY, MARCH 29, 2007
IEF236I ALLOC. FOR XXXXPFDR COPY
IEF237I 3EC4 ALLOCATED TO STEPLIB
IEF237I 8A45 ALLOCATED TO SLSCNTL
IEF237I JES2 ALLOCATED TO SYSPRINT
IGD100I 8D12 ALLOCATED TO DDNAME SYSMDUMP DATACLAS ( )
IEF237I DMY ALLOCATED TO TAPE1
IEF237I JES2 ALLOCATED TO SYSIN
IEF237I 8A45 ALLOCATED TO D#SW8A45
IEF237I 8A45 ALLOCATED TO T#SW8A45
IEF285I SYS07088.T130822.RA000.XXXXPFDR.R0100612 KEPT
IEF285I VOL SER NOS= SW8A45.
IEF285I SYS07088.T130822.RA000.XXXXPFDR.R0100613 KEPT
IEF285I VOL SER NOS= SW8A45.
IEF142I XXXXPFDR COPY - STEP WAS EXECUTED - COND CODE 0000
IEF285I XXXX.LINKLIB KEPT
IEF285I VOL SER NOS= TSO020.
IEF285I XXXX.SOS610.SLSCNTL KEPT

```

```

IEF285I VOL SER NOS= SW8A45.
IEF285I XXXX.XXXXPFDR.JOB07751.D0000102.?          SYSOUT
IEF285I XXXX.SLUPCOPY.SYSMDUMP                    DELETED
IEF285I VOL SER NOS= SW8D12.
IEF285I XXXX.XXXXPFDR.JOB07751.D0000101.?          SYSIN
*****
*          DEVICE      DEVICE      EXCP      *
*          DDNAME     CLASS      ADDRESS  COUNT      *
*          -----     -
*          STEPLIB    DASD      3EC4     00000002   *
*          SLSCNTL    DASD      8A45     00000003   *
*          SYSPRINT   JES2                00000000   *
*          SYSMDUMP   DASD      8D12     00000000   *
*          TAPE1      JES2                00000000   *
*          SYSIN      JES2                00000000   *
*          D#SW8A45   DASD      8A45     00000007   *
*          T#SW8A45   DASD      8A45     00000000   *
*****
IEF373I STEP/COPY /START 2007088.1308
IEF374I STEP/COPY /STOP 2007088.1308 CPU  OMIN 00.03SEC SRB  OMIN 00.00SEC VIRT  228K SYS  300K EXT  1800K
SYS 7308K
IEF375I JOB/XXXXPFDR/START 2007088.1308
IEF376I JOB/XXXXPFDR/STOP 2007088.1308 CPU  OMIN 00.03SEC SRB  OMIN 00.00SEC
1FDR001 FDR INSTANT BACKUP - FDRSNAP VER. 5.4/30P - INNOVATION DATA PROCESSING DATE=2007.088 PAGE 1
0FDR303 CARD IMAGE -- SNAP TYPE=FDR,ENQ=OFF
FDR303 CARD IMAGE -- MOUNT VOL=SW8A45,SNAPUNIT=8D14
0FDR040 VOLUME IN USE - 002 OPENED DCBS
FDR007 STARTING TIME OF SNAPSHOT DUMP -- 13.08.22 -- UNIT=3390 ,IN=D#SW8A45,OUTPUT=TAPE1
FDR231 FDRSNAP COMPLETED SUCCESSFULLY - VOL=SW8A45 TO SNAPUNIT=8D14
FDR007 ENDING TIME OF SNAPSHOT DUMP -- 13.08.23 -- UNIT=3390 ,IN=D#SW8A45,OUTPUT=TAPE1
0FDR122 OPERATION STATISTICS FOR 3390 VOLUME.....SW8A45
FDR122 CYLINDERS ON VOLUME.....3,339
FDR122 DATASETS PROCESSED.....5
FDR122 BYTES READ FROM DASD.....333,900
FDR122 DASD TRACKS BACKED UP.....45
FDR122 BACKUP BLOCKS WRITTEN.....0
FDR122 DASD EXCPS.....13
FDR122 BACKUP FILE EXCPS.....0
FDR122 CPU TIME (SECONDS).....0.006
FDR122 ELAPSED TIME (MINUTES).....0.1
FDR122 BACKUP TIME(EXCLUDING MOUNTS).....0.1
FDR122 BACKUP COPY 1 DUMMY DSN=NULLFILE
FDR002 FDR DUMP SUCCESSFULLY COMPLETED VOL=SW8A45
FDR999 FDR SUCCESSFULLY COMPLETED

```

Example 5 - Failed DFSMSDss SnapShot PIT Copy (SVAA not initialized)

```

JES2 JOB LOG -- SYSTEM XXXX -- NODE XXXXXXXX

13.04.06 JOB07749 ---- THURSDAY, 29 MAR 2007 ----
13.04.06 JOB07749 IRR010I USERID XXXX IS ASSIGNED TO THIS JOB.
13.04.06 JOB07749 ICH70001I XXXX LAST ACCESS AT 13:02:53 ON THURSDAY, MARCH 29, 2007
13.04.07 JOB07749 $HASP373 XXXXPDSS STARTED - INIT AA - CLASS A - SYS XXXX
13.04.07 JOB07749 IEF403I XXXXPDSS - STARTED - TIME=13.04.07
13.04.09 JOB07749 SLS7100I SLUPCOPY VERSION 6.20 PROCESSING BEGINS
13.04.09 JOB07749 SLS7028I HSC SUBSYSTEM NAME = HSCX
13.04.09 JOB07749 SLS7028I COPY FUNCTION IS IN EFFECT
13.04.09 JOB07749 SLS7028I DFSMSDSS METHOD IS IN EFFECT
13.04.09 JOB07749 SLS7028I PIT COPY WTOR OPTION IS ENABLED
13.04.09 JOB07749 SLS7028I ABEND OPTION IS ENABLED
13.04.09 JOB07749 SLS7028I RESERVE RETRY WTOR OPTION IS ENABLED
13.04.09 JOB07749 SLS7070I READ JFCB SUCCESSFUL FOR SLSCNTL DD
13.04.09 JOB07749 SLS7010I SSCVT LOCATED FOR SUBSYSTEM HSCX
13.04.09 JOB07749 SLS7011I ASCB FOR HSC JOB NAME HSCX HAS ASID 001D
13.04.09 JOB07749 SLS7102I HSC QNAME = HSCXLSQN
13.04.09 JOB07749 SLS7025I PRIMARY CDS NAME = XXXX.SOS610.SLSCNTL
13.04.09 JOB07749 SLS7015I JCL CDS NAME MATCHES PRIMARY CDS NAME
13.04.09 JOB07749 *0030 SLS7090A REPLY Y TO INITIATE POINT-IN-TIME COPY
13.04.12 JOB07749 R 30,Y
13.04.12 JOB07749 SLS7071I OPEN SUCCESSFUL FOR SLSCNTL DD
13.04.12 JOB07749 SLS7104I UCB LOCATED SUCCESSFULLY
13.04.12 JOB07749 SLS7072I RESERVE SUCCESSFUL FOR SLSCNTL DD
13.04.12 JOB07749 SLS7073I CDS DHB READ SUCCESSFUL
13.04.12 JOB07749 SLS7021I JCL CDS NAME MATCHES DHB CDS NAME
13.04.12 JOB07749 SLS7170I CDS DPV READ SUCCESSFUL
13.04.12 JOB07749 SLS7106I ORIGINAL LAST BACKUP DATE AND TIME = 2007032913:02:53
13.04.13 JOB07749 SLS7171I CDS DPV WRITE SUCCESSFUL
13.04.13 JOB07749 SLS7107I UPDATED LAST BACKUP DATE AND TIME = 2007032913:04:13
13.04.13 JOB07749 SLS7074I ATTACH SUCCESSFUL
13.04.26 JOB07749 SLS7075I TCB USER CC=0000, SYSTEM CC=0008
13.04.26 JOB07749 SLS7108I DPV RESTORE REQUIRED
13.04.26 JOB07749 SLS7172I CDS DPV RESTORE SUCCESSFUL
13.04.26 JOB07749 SLS7076I DETACH SUCCESSFUL
13.04.26 JOB07749 SLS7077I MAINLINE DEQ SUCCESSFUL FOR SLSCNTL DD
13.04.26 JOB07749 SLS7078I MAINLINE CLOSE SUCCESSFUL FOR SLSCNTL DD
13.04.26 JOB07749 SLS7035E POINT-IN-TIME COPY INVALID
13.04.26 JOB07749 SLS7112I SLUPCOPY VERSION 6.20 ABENDED BY REQUEST
13.04.47 JOB07749 IEA995I SYMPTOM DUMP OUTPUT 975
975 USER COMPLETION CODE=0555
975 TIME=13.04.26 SEQ=00397 CPU=0000 ASID=002A
975 PSW AT TIME OF ERROR 078D1000 00008B22 ILC 2 INTC 0D
975 ACTIVE LOAD MODULE ADDRESS=00007000 OFFSET=00001B22
975 NAME=SLUPCOPY
975 DATA AT PSW 00008B1C - 00181610 0A0DBFBF B00050B0
975 GR 0: C0000000 1: C000022B
975 2: 00009A20 3: 006CFCCC
975 4: 00009488 5: 000097B3
975 6: 00009000 7: 0000E000
975 8: 006CFCCC 9: 00000064
975 A: 00008000 B: 0000AB4A
975 C: 00007000 D: 0000C000
975 E: 500080EE F: 00000000
975 END OF SYMPTOM DUMP
13.04.47 JOB07749 IEA993I SYSMDUMP TAKEN TO XXXX.SLUPCOPY.SYSMDUMP
13.04.47 JOB07749 IEF450I XXXXPDSS COPY - ABEND=S000 U0555 REASON=00000000 977
977 TIME=13.04.47
13.04.48 JOB07749 - SYSTEM RELEASE: SP7.0.5 HBB7708
13.04.48 JOB07749 - --TIMINGS (MINS.)-- ----PAGING COUNTS----
13.04.48 JOB07749 -JOBNAME STEPNAME PROCSTEP RC EXCP CPU SRB CLOCK SERV PG PAGE SWAP VIO SWAPS
13.04.48 JOB07749 -XXXXPDSS COPY U0555 12128 .01 .00 .6 18938 0 44 0 0 0
13.04.48 JOB07749 IEF404I XXXXPDSS - ENDED - TIME=13.04.48
13.04.48 JOB07749 -XXXXPDSS ENDED. NAME-XXXXXXX TOTAL CPU TIME= .01 TOTAL ELAPSED TIME= .6
13.04.48 JOB07749 $HASP395 XXXXPDSS ENDED
0----- JES2 JOB STATISTICS -----
- 29 MAR 2007 JOB EXECUTION DATE
- 27 CARDS READ
- 221 SYSOUT PRINT RECORDS
- 0 SYSOUT PUNCH RECORDS
- 14 SYSOUT SPOOL KBYTES
- 0.68 MINUTES EXECUTION TIME
1 //XXXXPDSS JOB (XXXXXX),XXXXXXXX, JOB07749
// CLASS=A,
// MSGCLASS=1
//*

```

Last Backup Date and Time and Error Recovery Considerations

Each CDS contains values for the last backup date and time as well as the last restore date and time. Consequently, each CDS backup created by SLUADMIN BACKUP contains these values, and this information is updated within the backup copy to reflect the actual date and time of the backup. The DISPLAY CDS command in HSC 6.1 and later has been enhanced to display the last backup date and time and the last restore date and time of the CDSs currently in use.

SLUPCOPY does not in any way modify the PIT copy created by SnapShot, DFSMSdss, or FDRSNAP, but it does update the last backup date and time in the Primary CDS before performing the PIT copy so that the PIT copy contains the correct last backup date and time. In the event of an unsuccessful PIT copy, the last backup date and time in the Primary CDS is restored to the original value to maintain accuracy. If SLUPCOPY is cancelled by operator command after the last backup date and time in the Primary CDS is updated, SLUPCOPY cannot restore last backup date and time to the correct value.

Examples

Typical message sequences for last backup date and time processing are shown below (messages prior to 7072 are not shown in some examples).

Successful PIT copy

```
SLS7072I RESERVE SUCCESSFUL FOR SLSCNTL DD
SLS7073I CDS DHB READ SUCCESSFUL
SLS7021I JCL CDS NAME MATCHES DHB CDS NAME
SLS7170I CDS DPV READ SUCCESSFUL
SLS7106I ORIGINAL LAST BACKUP DATE AND TIME = 2007032913:10:13
SLS7171I CDS DPV WRITE SUCCESSFUL
SLS7107I UPDATED LAST BACKUP DATE AND TIME = 2007032914:07:09
SLS7074I ATTACH SUCCESSFUL
SLS7075I TCB USER CC=0000, SYSTEM CC=0000
SLS7076I DETACH SUCCESSFUL
SLS7077I MAINLINE DEQ SUCCESSFUL FOR SLSCNTL DD
SLS7078I MAINLINE CLOSE SUCCESSFUL FOR SLSCNTL DD
SLS7031I POINT-IN-TIME COPY SUCCESSFUL
SLS7111I SLUPCOPY VERSION 6.20 PROCESSING ENDS
```

No action is required since the PIT copy was successful; the last backup date and time in the Primary CDS reflects the date and time of the PIT copy.

Message 7180 (before OPEN and RESERVE)

An error occurs before the CDS is opened and reserved (and before the last backup date and time is updated, and before the PIT copy).

```
SLS7015I JCL CDS NAME MATCHES PRIMARY CDS NAME
SLS7081I ESTAE ROUTINE: SDWA PRESENT
SLS7180I ESTAE ROUTINE: DPV RESTORE NOT REQUIRED - DPV NEVER UPDATED
SLS7188I ESTAE ROUTINE: PROCESSING ENDS
IEA995I SYMPTOM DUMP OUTPUT 536
```

Message 7180 is issued indicating that the ESTAE recovery routine determined that the last backup date and time in the Primary CDS did not need to be restored to its original value because the Primary CDS was never updated.

Message 7180 (after OPEN but before RESERVE)

An error occurs after the CDS is opened but before the CDS is reserved (and before the last backup date and time is updated, and before the PIT copy)

```
SLS7015I JCL CDS NAME MATCHES PRIMARY CDS NAME
SLS7071I OPEN SUCCESSFUL FOR SLSCNTL DD
SLS7104I UCB LOCATED SUCCESSFULLY
SLS7081I ESTAE ROUTINE: SDWA PRESENT
SLS7180I ESTAE ROUTINE: DPV RESTORE NOT REQUIRED - DPV NEVER UPDATED
SLS7083I ESTAE ROUTINE: CLOSE SUCCESSFUL
SLS7188I ESTAE ROUTINE: PROCESSING ENDS
IEA995I SYMPTOM DUMP OUTPUT 593
```

Message 7180 is issued indicating that the ESTAE recovery routine determined that the last backup date and time in the Primary CDS did not need to be restored to its original value because the Primary CDS was never updated.

Message 7180 (after OPEN and RESERVE)

An error occurs after the CDS is opened and reserved (but before the last backup date and time is updated, and before the PIT copy)

```
SLS7072I RESERVE SUCCESSFUL FOR SLSCNTL DD
SLS7073I CDS DHB READ SUCCESSFUL
SLS7021I JCL CDS NAME MATCHES DHB CDS NAME
SLS7170I CDS DPV READ SUCCESSFUL
SLS7106I ORIGINAL LAST BACKUP DATE AND TIME = 2007032914:07:09
SLS7081I ESTAE ROUTINE: SDWA PRESENT
SLS7180I ESTAE ROUTINE: DPV RESTORE NOT REQUIRED - DPV NEVER UPDATED
SLS7082I ESTAE ROUTINE: DEQ SUCCESSFUL
SLS7083I ESTAE ROUTINE: CLOSE SUCCESSFUL
SLS7188I ESTAE ROUTINE: PROCESSING ENDS
IEA995I SYMPTOM DUMP OUTPUT 658
```

Message 7180 is issued indicating that the ESTAE recovery routine determined that the last backup date and time in the Primary CDS did not need to be restored to its original value (as previously displayed by message 7106) because the Primary CDS was never updated.

Message 7182 / 7186

An error occurs after the last backup date and time is updated, but before the PIT copy

```
SLS7072I RESERVE SUCCESSFUL FOR SLSCNTL DD
SLS7073I CDS DHB READ SUCCESSFUL
SLS7021I JCL CDS NAME MATCHES DHB CDS NAME
SLS7170I CDS DPV READ SUCCESSFUL
SLS7106I ORIGINAL LAST BACKUP DATE AND TIME = 2007032914:07:09
SLS7171I CDS DPV WRITE SUCCESSFUL
SLS7107I UPDATED LAST BACKUP DATE AND TIME = 2007032914:10:53
SLS7081I ESTAE ROUTINE: SDWA PRESENT
SLS7182I ESTAE ROUTINE: DPV RESTORE REQUIRED
SLS7186I ESTAE ROUTINE: DPV RESTORE SUCCESSFUL
SLS7082I ESTAE ROUTINE: DEQ SUCCESSFUL
SLS7083I ESTAE ROUTINE: CLOSE SUCCESSFUL
SLS7188I ESTAE ROUTINE: PROCESSING ENDS
IEA995I SYMPTOM DUMP OUTPUT 724
```

Message 7182 is issued indicating that the last backup date and time in the Primary CDS needs to be restored to its original value (as previously displayed by message 7106). Message 7186 is issued indicating that the ESTAE recovery routine successfully restored the last backup date and time in the Primary CDS to its original value and that no further action needs to be taken.

Message 7181

An error occurs after the last backup date and time is updated, and after the PIT copy

```
SLS7072I RESERVE SUCCESSFUL FOR SLSCNTL DD
SLS7073I CDS DHB READ SUCCESSFUL
SLS7021I JCL CDS NAME MATCHES DHB CDS NAME
SLS7170I CDS DPV READ SUCCESSFUL
SLS7106I ORIGINAL LAST BACKUP DATE AND TIME = 2007032914:07:09
SLS7171I CDS DPV WRITE SUCCESSFUL
SLS7107I UPDATED LAST BACKUP DATE AND TIME = 2007032914:11:35
SLS7074I ATTACH SUCCESSFUL
SLS7075I TCB USER CC=0000, SYSTEM CC=0000
SLS7081I ESTAE ROUTINE: SDWA PRESENT
SLS7181I ESTAE ROUTINE: DPV RESTORE NOT REQUIRED - PIT COPY SUCCESSFUL
SLS7082I ESTAE ROUTINE: DEQ SUCCESSFUL
SLS7083I ESTAE ROUTINE: CLOSE SUCCESSFUL
SLS7188I ESTAE ROUTINE: PROCESSING ENDS
IEA995I SYMPTOM DUMP OUTPUT 791
```

Message 7181 is issued indicating that the ESTAE recovery routine determined that the last backup date and time in the Primary CDS did not need to be restored to its original value (as previously displayed by message 7106) because even though the CDS was updated, the error occurred after a successful PIT copy.

Message 7172

The PIT copy is invalid (in this case, SVAA was not previously initialized)

```
SLS7072I RESERVE SUCCESSFUL FOR SLSCNTL DD
SLS7073I CDS DHB READ SUCCESSFUL
SLS7021I JCL CDS NAME MATCHES DHB CDS NAME
SLS7170I CDS DPV READ SUCCESSFUL
SLS7106I ORIGINAL LAST BACKUP DATE AND TIME = 2007032915:44:27
SLS7171I CDS DPV WRITE SUCCESSFUL
SLS7107I UPDATED LAST BACKUP DATE AND TIME = 2007032915:45:29
SLS7074I ATTACH SUCCESSFUL
SLS7075I TCB USER CC=0000, SYSTEM CC=000C
SLS7108I DPV RESTORE REQUIRED
SLS7172I CDS DPV RESTORE SUCCESSFUL
SLS7076I DETACH SUCCESSFUL
SLS7077I MAINLINE DEQ SUCCESSFUL FOR SLSCNTL DD
SLS7078I MAINLINE CLOSE SUCCESSFUL FOR SLSCNTL DD
SLS7035E POINT-IN-TIME COPY INVALID
SLS7111I SLUPCOPY VERSION 6.20 PROCESSING ENDS
```

Message 7172 is issued indicating that the date and time of the last backup in the Primary CDS is successfully restored to its original value (as previously displayed by message 7106) because the PIT copy is invalid.

```

/*-----*//
/* DSS PIT COPY
/*-----*//
2 //COPY EXEC PGM=SLUPCOPY,REGION=4M,
// PARM='HSCX,COPY,DSS,OPT(PC,AB,RR)'
3 //STEPLIB DD DSN=XXXX.LINKLIB,DISP=SHR
4 //SLSCNTL DD DSN=XXXX.SOS610.SLSCNTL,DISP=SHR
5 //SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
6 //SYSDUMP DD DSN=XXXX.SLUPCOPY.SYSDUMP,DISP=(,DELETE,CATLG),
// UNIT=SYSALLDA,SPACE=(CYL,100,RLSE),VOL=SER=SW8D12
7 //SYSIN DD *
ICH70001I XXXX LAST ACCESS AT 13:02:53 ON THURSDAY, MARCH 29, 2007
IEF236I ALLOC. FOR XXXXPDSS COPY
IEF237I 3EC4 ALLOCATED TO STEPLIB
IEF237I 8A45 ALLOCATED TO SLSCNTL
IEF237I JES2 ALLOCATED TO SYSPRINT
IGD100I 8D12 ALLOCATED TO DDNAME SYSDUMP DATACLAS ( )
IEF237I JES2 ALLOCATED TO SYSIN
IEF237I 8D12 ALLOCATED TO SYS00001
IGD100I 3CF1 ALLOCATED TO DDNAME SYS00002 DATACLAS ( )
IGD100I 3EF1 ALLOCATED TO DDNAME SYS00003 DATACLAS ( )
IGD100I 3DAC ALLOCATED TO DDNAME SYS00004 DATACLAS ( )
IGD100I 3EF1 ALLOCATED TO DDNAME SYS00005 DATACLAS ( )
IGD100I 3CF1 ALLOCATED TO DDNAME SYS00006 DATACLAS ( )
IGD100I 3DAC ALLOCATED TO DDNAME SYS00007 DATACLAS ( )
IGD100I 3EF1 ALLOCATED TO DDNAME SYS00008 DATACLAS ( )
IGD100I 3DAC ALLOCATED TO DDNAME SYS00009 DATACLAS ( )
IGD100I 3DAC ALLOCATED TO DDNAME SYS00010 DATACLAS ( )
IGD100I 3EF1 ALLOCATED TO DDNAME SYS00011 DATACLAS ( )
IEF237I 8A45 ALLOCATED TO SYS00012
IEF285I SYS07088.T130413.RA000.XXXXPDSS.R0100595 DELETED
IEF285I VOL SER NOS= WORK01.
IEF285I SYS07088.T130414.RA000.XXXXPDSS.R0100596 DELETED
IEF285I VOL SER NOS= WORK08.
IEF285I SYS07088.T130414.RA000.XXXXPDSS.R0100597 DELETED
IEF285I VOL SER NOS= WORK02.
IEF285I SYS07088.T130414.RA000.XXXXPDSS.R0100598 DELETED
IEF285I VOL SER NOS= WORK08.
IEF285I SYS07088.T130415.RA000.XXXXPDSS.R0100599 DELETED
IEF285I VOL SER NOS= WORK01.
IEF285I SYS07088.T130415.RA000.XXXXPDSS.R0100600 DELETED
IEF285I VOL SER NOS= WORK02.
IEF285I SYS07088.T130416.RA000.XXXXPDSS.R0100601 DELETED
IEF285I VOL SER NOS= WORK08.
IEF285I SYS07088.T130416.RA000.XXXXPDSS.R0100602 DELETED
IEF285I VOL SER NOS= WORK02.
IEF285I SYS07088.T130417.RA000.XXXXPDSS.R0100603 DELETED
IEF285I VOL SER NOS= WORK02.
IEF285I SYS07088.T130417.RA000.XXXXPDSS.R0100604 DELETED
IEF285I VOL SER NOS= WORK08.
IEF285I SYS07088.T130419.RA000.XXXXPDSS.R0100605 KEPT
IEF285I VOL SER NOS= SW8A45.
IEF285I SYS07088.T130413.RA000.XXXXPDSS.R0100594 KEPT
IEF285I VOL SER NOS= SW8D12.
IEA995I SYMPTOM DUMP OUTPUT

```



```

USER COMPLETION CODE=0555
TIME=13.04.26 SEQ=00397 CPU=0000 ASID=002A
PSW AT TIME OF ERROR 078D1000 00008B22 ILC 2 INTC 0D
ACTIVE LOAD MODULE ADDRESS=00007000 OFFSET=00001B22
NAME=SLUPCOPY
DATA AT PSW 00008B1C - 00181610 0A0DBFBF B00050B0
GR 0: C0000000 1: C000022B
2: 00009A20 3: 006CFCCC
4: 00009488 5: 000097B3
6: 00009000 7: 0000E000
8: 006CFCCC 9: 00000064
A: 00008000 B: 0000AB4A
C: 00007000 D: 0000C000
E: 500080EE F: 00000000
END OF SYMPTOM DUMP
IEA993I SYSDUMP TAKEN TO XXXX.SLUPCOPY.SYSDUMP
IEF472I XXXXPDS COPY - COMPLETION CODE - SYSTEM=000 USER=0555 REASON=00000000
IEF285I XXXX.LINKLIB KEPT
IEF285I VOL SER NOS= TSO020.
IEF285I XXXX.SOS610.SLSCNTL KEPT
IEF285I VOL SER NOS= SW8A45.
IEF285I XXXX.XXXXPDS.JOB07749.D0000102.? SYSOUT
IEF285I XXXX.SLUPCOPY.SYSDUMP CATALOGED
IEF285I VOL SER NOS= SW8D12.
IEF285I XXXX.XXXXPDS.JOB07749.D0000101.? SYSIN
*****
* DDNAME DEVICE DEVICE EXCP *
* CLASS ADDRESS COUNT *
* ----- *
* STEPLIB DASD 3EC4 00000002 *
* SLSCNTL DASD 8A45 00000004 *
* SYSPRINT JES2 00000000 *
* SYSDUMP DASD 8D12 00011417 *
* SYSIN JES2 00000000 *
* SYS00002 DASD 3CF1 00000000 *
* SYS00003 DASD 3EF1 00000000 *
* SYS00004 DASD 3DAC 00000000 *
* SYS00005 DASD 3EF1 00000000 *
* SYS00006 DASD 3CF1 00000000 *
* SYS00007 DASD 3DAC 00000000 *
* SYS00008 DASD 3EF1 00000000 *
* SYS00009 DASD 3DAC 00000000 *
* SYS00010 DASD 3DAC 00000000 *
* SYS00011 DASD 3EF1 00000000 *
* SYS00012 DASD 8A45 00000003 *
* SYS00001 DASD 8D12 00000003 *
*****
IEF373I STEP/COPY /START 2007088.1304
IEF374I STEP/COPY /STOP 2007088.1304 CPU 0MIN 00.65SEC SRB 0MIN 00.16SEC VIRT 1868K SYS 400K EXT 784K
SYS 7484K
IEF375I JOB/XXXXPDS/START 2007088.1304
IEF376I JOB/XXXXPDS/STOP 2007088.1304 CPU 0MIN 00.65SEC SRB 0MIN 00.16SEC
1PAGE 0001 5695-DF175 DFSMSDSS V1R05.0 DATA SET SERVICES 2007.088 13:04
- COPY -
DATASET(INCLUDE(XXXX.SOS610.SLSCNTL)) -
RENUNC((XXXX.SOS610.SLSCNTL, -
XXXX.SOS610.DFSMSDSS)) -
FASTREPLICATION(REQUIRED) -
CANCELERROR -
SHARE -
TOL(ENQF) -
TGTTALOC(CYL) -
OUTDYNAM(SW8D12) -
CATALOG -
ADR101I (R/I)-RI01 (01), TASKID 001 HAS BEEN ASSIGNED TO COMMAND 'COPY '
ADR109I (R/I)-RI01 (01), 2007.088 13:04:13 INITIAL SCAN OF USER CONTROL STATEMENTS COMPLETED.
ADR016I (001)-PRIME(01), RACF LOGGING OPTION IN EFFECT FOR THIS TASK
OADR006I (001)-STEND(01), 2007.088 13:04:13 EXECUTION BEGINS
OADR918I (001)-ALLOC(04), FAST REPLICATION COULD NOT BE USED FOR DATA SET XXXX.SOS610.SLSCNTL, RETURN CODE 3
0 1 VOLUME WAS REJECTED FOR QFRVOLS VOLUME REASON CODE C8 - VOLUME NOT SNAPSHOT ELIGIBLE
OADR938E (001)-ALLOC(10), FASTREPLICATION(REQUIRED) WAS SPECIFIED BUT FAST REPLICATION COULD NOT BE USED FOR DATA SET
XXXX.SOS610.SLSCNTL
OADR801I (001)-DDDS (01), DATA SET FILTERING IS COMPLETE. 1 OF 1 DATA SETS WERE SELECTED: 0 FAILED SERIALIZATION AND 0
FAILED FOR
OTHER REASONS.
OADR455W (001)-DDDS (02), THE FOLLOWING DATA SETS WERE NOT SUCCESSFULLY PROCESSED
0 XXXX.SOS610.SLSCNTL
OADR006I (001)-STEND(02), 2007.088 13:04:26 EXECUTION ENDS
OADR013I (001)-CLTSK(01), 2007.088 13:04:26 TASK COMPLETED WITH RETURN CODE 0008
OADR012I (SCH)-DSSU (01), 2007.088 13:04:26 DFSMSDSS PROCESSING COMPLETE. HIGHEST RETURN CODE IS 0008 FROM:
TASK 001

```

```
*****
* SLUPCOPY VERSION 6.20          COPYRIGHT 2006-2007 StorageTek, INC. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED          VITAL DIAGNOSTIC INFO
*                               RUN DATE= 03/29/07  RUN TIME= 13:04:26
*
*   SYSTEM NAME= XXXX          JES NAME= JES2          CVT PRODN= SP7.0.5  FMID= HBB7708  DPAR= 03010500  FT14= FF7F737F  FT56=
A0300000
*   LPAR NAME=                JES TYPE= JES2          ECVT PNAM= z/OS          VRM= 010500          PSEQ= 01010500
*   VM NAME= XXXXXMVS        PROC= P302A          CPID= FFXXXXXX2084
*   SUBSYSTEM NAME= HSCX      LVT ADDR= 433B1000  SSCT ADDR= 00963124  SSVT= 433D40C0  SUSE= 433B1000  SUS2= 2445D4C7  FLG1=
40000000
*
*****
```

Example 6 - Failed DFSMSDss SnapShot PIT Copy (Duplicate Target Data Set)

```

JES2 JOB LOG -- SYSTEM XXXX -- NODE XXXXXXXX

13.10.38 JOB07755 ---- THURSDAY, 29 MAR 2007 ----
13.10.38 JOB07755 IRR010I USERID XXXX IS ASSIGNED TO THIS JOB.
13.10.38 JOB07755 ICH70001I XXXX LAST ACCESS AT 13:10:13 ON THURSDAY, MARCH 29, 2007
13.10.39 JOB07755 $HASP373 XXXXPDSS STARTED - INIT AA - CLASS A - SYS XXXX
13.10.39 JOB07755 IEF403I XXXXPDSS - STARTED - TIME=13.10.39
13.10.40 JOB07755 SLS7100I SLUPCOPY VERSION 6.20 PROCESSING BEGINS
13.10.40 JOB07755 SLS7028I HSC SUBSYSTEM NAME = HSCX
13.10.40 JOB07755 SLS7028I COPY FUNCTION IS IN EFFECT
13.10.40 JOB07755 SLS7028I DFSMSDSS METHOD IS IN EFFECT
13.10.40 JOB07755 SLS7028I PIT COPY WTOR OPTION IS ENABLED
13.10.40 JOB07755 SLS7028I ABEND OPTION IS ENABLED
13.10.40 JOB07755 SLS7028I RESERVE RETRY WTOR OPTION IS ENABLED
13.10.40 JOB07755 SLS7070I READ JFCB SUCCESSFUL FOR SLSCNTL DD
13.10.40 JOB07755 SLS7010I SSCVT LOCATED FOR SUBSYSTEM HSCX
13.10.40 JOB07755 SLS7011I ASCB FOR HSC JOB NAME HSCX HAS ASID 001D
13.10.40 JOB07755 SLS7102I HSC QNAME = HSCXLSQN
13.10.40 JOB07755 SLS7025I PRIMARY CDS NAME = XXXX.SOS610.SLSCNTL
13.10.40 JOB07755 SLS7015I JCL CDS NAME MATCHES PRIMARY CDS NAME
13.10.40 JOB07755 *0033 SLS7090A REPLY Y TO INITIATE POINT-IN-TIME COPY
13.10.48 JOB07755 R 33,Y
13.10.48 JOB07755 SLS7071I OPEN SUCCESSFUL FOR SLSCNTL DD
13.10.48 JOB07755 SLS7104I UCB LOCATED SUCCESSFULLY
13.10.48 JOB07755 SLS7072I RESERVE SUCCESSFUL FOR SLSCNTL DD
13.10.48 JOB07755 SLS7073I CDS DHB READ SUCCESSFUL
13.10.48 JOB07755 SLS7021I JCL CDS NAME MATCHES DHB CDS NAME
13.10.48 JOB07755 SLS7170I CDS DPV READ SUCCESSFUL
13.10.48 JOB07755 SLS7106I ORIGINAL LAST BACKUP DATE AND TIME = 2007032913:10:13
13.10.48 JOB07755 SLS7171I CDS DPV WRITE SUCCESSFUL
13.10.48 JOB07755 SLS7107I UPDATED LAST BACKUP DATE AND TIME = 2007032913:10:48
13.10.48 JOB07755 SLS7074I ATTACH SUCCESSFUL
13.11.04 JOB07755 SLS7075I TCB USER CC=0000, SYSTEM CC=0008
13.11.04 JOB07755 SLS7108I DPV RESTORE REQUIRED
13.11.04 JOB07755 SLS7172I CDS DPV RESTORE SUCCESSFUL
13.11.04 JOB07755 SLS7076I DETACH SUCCESSFUL
13.11.04 JOB07755 SLS7077I MAINLINE DEQ SUCCESSFUL FOR SLSCNTL DD
13.11.04 JOB07755 SLS7078I MAINLINE CLOSE SUCCESSFUL FOR SLSCNTL DD
13.11.04 JOB07755 SLS7035E POINT-IN-TIME COPY INVALID
13.11.04 JOB07755 SLS7112I SLUPCOPY VERSION 6.20 ABENDED BY REQUEST
13.11.19 JOB07755 IEA995I SYMPTOM DUMP OUTPUT 224
224 USER COMPLETION CODE=0555
224 TIME=13.11.04 SEQ=00401 CPU=0000 ASID=002A
224 PSW AT TIME OF ERROR 078D1000 00008B22 ILC 2 INTC 0D
224 ACTIVE LOAD MODULE ADDRESS=00007000 OFFSET=00001B22
224 NAME=SLUPCOPY
224 DATA AT PSW 00008B1C - 00181610 0A0DBFBF B00050B0
224 GR 0: C0000000 1: C000022B
224 2: 00009A20 3: 006CFCCC
224 4: 00009488 5: 000097B3
224 6: 00009000 7: 0000E000
224 8: 006CFCCC 9: 00000064
224 A: 00008000 B: 0000AB4A
224 C: 00007000 D: 0000C000
224 E: 500080EE F: 00000000
224 END OF SYMPTOM DUMP
13.11.19 JOB07755 IEA993I SYSMDUMP TAKEN TO XXXX.SLUPCOPY.SYSMDUMP
13.11.19 JOB07755 IEF450I XXXXPDSS COPY - ABEND=S000 U0555 REASON=00000000 226
226 TIME=13.11.19
13.11.20 JOB07755 - SYSTEM RELEASE: SP7.0.5 HBB7708
13.11.20 JOB07755 - --TIMINGS (MINS.)-- ----PAGING COUNTS----
13.11.20 JOB07755 -JOBNAME STEPNAME PROCSTEP RC EXCP CPU SRB CLOCK SERV PG PAGE SWAP VIO SWAPS
13.11.20 JOB07755 -XXXXPDSS COPY U0555 12228 .01 .00 .6 19504 0 44 0 0 0
13.11.20 JOB07755 IEF404I XXXXPDSS - ENDED - TIME=13.11.20
13.11.20 JOB07755 -XXXXPDSS ENDED. NAME-XXXXXXX TOTAL CPU TIME= .01 TOTAL ELAPSED TIME= .6
13.11.20 JOB07755 $HASP395 XXXXPDSS ENDED
0----- JES2 JOB STATISTICS -----
- 29 MAR 2007 JOB EXECUTION DATE
- 27 CARDS READ
- 218 SYSOUT PRINT RECORDS
- 0 SYSOUT PUNCH RECORDS
- 14 SYSOUT SPOOL KBYTES
- 0.69 MINUTES EXECUTION TIME
1 //XXXXPDSS JOB (XXXXXX),XXXXXXXX, JOB07755
// CLASS=A,MSGCLASS=1
//*
//*-----*//
//* DSS PIT COPY
//*-----*//

```

```

2 //COPY      EXEC PGM=SLUPCOPY,REGION=4M,
//          PARM='HSCX,COPY,DSS,OPT(PC,AB,RR)'
3 //STEP1LIB DD DSN=XXXX.LINKLIB,DISP=SHR
4 //SLSCNTL  DD DSN=XXXX.SOS610.SLSCNTL,DISP=SHR
5 //SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
6 //SYSMDUMP DD DSN=XXXX.SLUPCOPY.SYSMDUMP,DISP=(,DELETE,CATLG),
//          UNIT=SYSALLDA,SPACE=(CYL,100,RLSE),VOL=SER=SW8D12
7 //SYSIN    DD *
ICH70001I XXXX      LAST ACCESS AT 13:10:13 ON THURSDAY, MARCH 29, 2007
IEF236I ALLOC. FOR XXXXPDSS COPY
IEF237I 3EC4 ALLOCATED TO STEP1LIB
IEF237I 8A45 ALLOCATED TO SLSCNTL
IEF237I JES2 ALLOCATED TO SYSPRINT
IGD100I 8D12 ALLOCATED TO DDNAME SYSMDUMP DATACLAS (      )
IEF237I JES2 ALLOCATED TO SYSIN
IEF237I 8D12 ALLOCATED TO SYS00001
IGD100I 3DAC ALLOCATED TO DDNAME SYS00002 DATACLAS (      )
IGD100I 3EF1 ALLOCATED TO DDNAME SYS00003 DATACLAS (      )
IGD100I 3CF1 ALLOCATED TO DDNAME SYS00004 DATACLAS (      )
IGD100I 3CF1 ALLOCATED TO DDNAME SYS00005 DATACLAS (      )
IGD100I 3CF1 ALLOCATED TO DDNAME SYS00006 DATACLAS (      )
IGD100I 3EF1 ALLOCATED TO DDNAME SYS00007 DATACLAS (      )
IGD100I 3EF1 ALLOCATED TO DDNAME SYS00008 DATACLAS (      )
IGD100I 3DAC ALLOCATED TO DDNAME SYS00009 DATACLAS (      )
IGD100I 3DAC ALLOCATED TO DDNAME SYS00010 DATACLAS (      )
IGD100I 3EF1 ALLOCATED TO DDNAME SYS00011 DATACLAS (      )
IEF237I 8A45 ALLOCATED TO SYS00012
IEF285I  SYS07088.T131049.RA000.XXXXPDSS.R0100628      DELETED
IEF285I  VOL SER NOS= WORK02.
IEF285I  SYS07088.T131050.RA000.XXXXPDSS.R0100629      DELETED
IEF285I  VOL SER NOS= WORK08.
IEF285I  SYS07088.T131050.RA000.XXXXPDSS.R0100630      DELETED
IEF285I  VOL SER NOS= WORK01.
IEF285I  SYS07088.T131050.RA000.XXXXPDSS.R0100631      DELETED
IEF285I  VOL SER NOS= WORK01.
IEF285I  SYS07088.T131051.RA000.XXXXPDSS.R0100632      DELETED
IEF285I  VOL SER NOS= WORK01.
IEF285I  SYS07088.T131051.RA000.XXXXPDSS.R0100633      DELETED
IEF285I  VOL SER NOS= WORK08.
IEF285I  SYS07088.T131052.RA000.XXXXPDSS.R0100634      DELETED
IEF285I  VOL SER NOS= WORK08.
IEF285I  SYS07088.T131052.RA000.XXXXPDSS.R0100635      DELETED
IEF285I  VOL SER NOS= WORK02.
IEF285I  SYS07088.T131053.RA000.XXXXPDSS.R0100636      DELETED
IEF285I  VOL SER NOS= WORK02.
IEF285I  SYS07088.T131053.RA000.XXXXPDSS.R0100637      DELETED
IEF285I  VOL SER NOS= WORK08.
IEF285I  SYS07088.T131055.RA000.XXXXPDSS.R0100638      KEPT
IEF285I  VOL SER NOS= SW8A45.
IEF285I  SYS07088.T131049.RA000.XXXXPDSS.R0100627      KEPT
IEF285I  VOL SER NOS= SW8D12.
IEA995I SYMPTOM DUMP OUTPUT
USER COMPLETION CODE=0555
TIME=13.11.04 SEQ=00401 CPU=0000 ASID=002A
PSW AT TIME OF ERROR 078D1000 00008B22 ILC 2 INTC 0D
ACTIVE LOAD MODULE          ADDRESS=00007000 OFFSET=00001B22
NAME=SLUPCOPY
DATA AT PSW 00008B1C - 00181610 0A0DBFBF B00050B0
GR 0: C0000000 1: C000022B
2: 00009A20 3: 006CFCCC
4: 00009488 5: 000097B3
6: 00009000 7: 0000E000
8: 006CFCCC 9: 00000064
A: 00008000 B: 0000AB4A
C: 00007000 D: 0000C000
E: 500080EE F: 00000000
END OF SYMPTOM DUMP
IEA993I SYSMDUMP TAKEN TO XXXX.SLUPCOPY.SYSMDUMP
IEF472I XXXXPDSS COPY - COMPLETION CODE - SYSTEM=000 USER=0555 REASON=00000000
IEF285I XXXX.LINKLIB      KEPT
IEF285I VOL SER NOS= TSO020.
IEF285I XXXX.SOS610.SLSCNTL      KEPT
IEF285I VOL SER NOS= SW8A45.
IEF285I XXXX.XXXXPDSS.JOB07755.D0000102.?      SYSOUT
IEF285I XXXX.SLUPCOPY.SYSMDUMP      CATALOGED
IEF285I VOL SER NOS= SW8D12.
IEF285I XXXX.XXXXPDSS.JOB07755.D0000101.?      SYSIN

```

```

*****
*                               DEVICE   DEVICE   EXCP   *
*                               CLASS    ADDRESS  COUNT   *
*                               -----  -
*                               STEPLIB  DASD     3EC4   00000002 *
*                               SLSCNTL  DASD     8A45   00000004 *
*                               SYSPRINT JES2     00000000 *
*                               SYSMDUMP DASD     8D12   00011474 *
*                               SYSIN    JES2     00000000 *
*                               SYS00002 DASD     3DAC   00000000 *
*                               SYS00003 DASD     3EF1   00000000 *
*                               SYS00004 DASD     3CF1   00000000 *
*                               SYS00005 DASD     3CF1   00000000 *
*                               SYS00006 DASD     3CF1   00000000 *
*                               SYS00007 DASD     3EF1   00000000 *
*                               SYS00008 DASD     3EF1   00000000 *
*                               SYS00009 DASD     3DAC   00000000 *
*                               SYS00010 DASD     3DAC   00000000 *
*                               SYS00011 DASD     3EF1   00000000 *
*                               SYS00012 DASD     8A45   00000003 *
*                               SYS00001 DASD     8D12   00000003 *
*****
IEF373I STEP/COPY /START 2007088.1310
IEF374I STEP/COPY /STOP 2007088.1311 CPU 0MIN 00.67SEC SRB 0MIN 00.16SEC VIRT 1868K SYS 400K EXT 788K
SYS 7484K
IEF375I JOB/XXXXPDSS/START 2007088.1310
IEF376I JOB/XXXXPDSS/STOP 2007088.1311 CPU 0MIN 00.67SEC SRB 0MIN 00.16SEC
1PAGE 0001 5695-DF175 DFSMSDSS V1R05.0 DATA SET SERVICES 2007.088 13:10
- COPY
  DATASET(INCLUDE(XXXX.SOS610.SLSCNTL))
  RENUNC((XXXX.SOS610.SLSCNTL,
          XXXX.SOS610.DFSMSDSS))
  FASTREPLICATION(REQUIRED)
  CANCELERROR
  SHARE
  TOL(ENQF)
  TGTALLOC(CYL)
  OUTDYNAM(SW8D12)
  CATALOG
ADR101I (R/I)-RI01 (01), TASKID 001 HAS BEEN ASSIGNED TO COMMAND 'COPY '
ADR109I (R/I)-RI01 (01), 2007.088 13:10:49 INITIAL SCAN OF USER CONTROL STATEMENTS COMPLETED.
ADR016I (001)-PRIME(01), RACF LOGGING OPTION IN EFFECT FOR THIS TASK
OADR006I (001)-STEND(01), 2007.088 13:10:49 EXECUTION BEGINS
OADR472E (001)-NEWS(11), UNABLE TO SELECT A TARGET VOLUME FOR DATA SET XXXX.SOS610.SLSCNTL, 08
OADR801I (001)-DDDS (01), DATA SET FILTERING IS COMPLETE. 1 OF 1 DATA SETS WERE SELECTED: 0 FAILED SERIALIZATION AND 0
FAILED FOR
      OTHER REASONS.
OADR455W (001)-DDDS (02), THE FOLLOWING DATA SETS WERE NOT SUCCESSFULLY PROCESSED
0      XXXX.SOS610.SLSCNTL
OADR006I (001)-STEND(02), 2007.088 13:11:04 EXECUTION ENDS
OADR013I (001)-CLTSK(01), 2007.088 13:11:04 TASK COMPLETED WITH RETURN CODE 0008
OADR012I (SCH)-DSSU (01), 2007.088 13:11:04 DFSMSDSS PROCESSING COMPLETE. HIGHEST RETURN CODE IS 0008
FROM:      TASK 001
*****
* SLUPCOPY VERSION 6.20          COPYRIGHT 2006-2007 StorageTek, INC. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED          VITAL DIAGNOSTIC INFO
*                               RUN DATE= 03/29/07 RUN TIME= 13:11:04
*
* SYSTEM NAME= XXXX          JES NAME= JES2          CVT PROD= SP7.0.5          FMID= HBB7708          DFAR= 03010500          FT14= FF7F737F          FT56=
A0300000
* LPAR NAME=          JES TYPE= JES2          ECVT PNAME= z/OS          VRM= 010500          PSEQ= 01010500
* VM NAME= XXXXXMVS          PROC= P302A          CPID= FFXXXXXX2084
* SUBSYSTEM NAME= HSCX          LVT ADDR= 433B1000          SSCT ADDR= 00963124          SSVT= 433D40C0          SUSE= 433B1000          SUS2= 2445D4C7          FLG1=
40000000
*
*****

```

Example 7 - Failed FDRSNAP PIT Copy (target volume not offline)

```

JES2 JOB LOG -- SYSTEM XXXX -- NODE XXXXXXXX

13.06.19 JOB07750 ---- THURSDAY, 29 MAR 2007 ----
13.06.19 JOB07750 IRR010I USERID XXXX IS ASSIGNED TO THIS JOB.
13.06.20 JOB07750 ICH70001I XXXX LAST ACCESS AT 13:04:13 ON THURSDAY, MARCH 29, 2007
13.06.20 JOB07750 $HASP373 XXXXPFDR STARTED - INIT AA - CLASS A - SYS XXXX
13.06.20 JOB07750 IEF403I XXXXPFDR - STARTED - TIME=13.06.20
13.06.22 JOB07750 SLS7100I SLUPCOPY VERSION 6.20 PROCESSING BEGINS
13.06.22 JOB07750 SLS7028I HSC SUBSYSTEM NAME = HSCX
13.06.22 JOB07750 SLS7028I COPY FUNCTION IS IN EFFECT
13.06.22 JOB07750 SLS7028I FDRSNAP METHOD IS IN EFFECT
13.06.22 JOB07750 SLS7028I RESERVE RETRY WTOR OPTION IS ENABLED
13.06.22 JOB07750 SLS7070I READ JFCB SUCCESSFUL FOR SLSCNTL DD
13.06.22 JOB07750 SLS7010I SSCVT LOCATED FOR SUBSYSTEM HSCX
13.06.22 JOB07750 SLS7011I ASCB FOR HSC JOB NAME HSCX HAS ASID 001D
13.06.22 JOB07750 SLS7102I HSC QNAME = HSCXLSQN
13.06.22 JOB07750 SLS7025I PRIMARY CDS NAME = XXXX.SOS610.SLSCNTL
13.06.22 JOB07750 SLS7015I JCL CDS NAME MATCHES PRIMARY CDS NAME
13.06.22 JOB07750 SLS7071I OPEN SUCCESSFUL FOR SLSCNTL DD
13.06.22 JOB07750 SLS7104I UCB LOCATED SUCCESSFULLY
13.06.22 JOB07750 SLS7072I RESERVE SUCCESSFUL FOR SLSCNTL DD
13.06.22 JOB07750 SLS7073I CDS DHB READ SUCCESSFUL
13.06.22 JOB07750 SLS7021I JCL CDS NAME MATCHES DHB CDS NAME
13.06.22 JOB07750 SLS7170I CDS DPV READ SUCCESSFUL
13.06.22 JOB07750 SLS7106I ORIGINAL LAST BACKUP DATE AND TIME = 2007032913:02:53
13.06.22 JOB07750 SLS7171I CDS DPV WRITE SUCCESSFUL
13.06.22 JOB07750 SLS7107I UPDATED LAST BACKUP DATE AND TIME = 2007032913:06:22
13.06.22 JOB07750 SLS7074I ATTACH SUCCESSFUL
13.06.40 JOB07750 IEA995I SYMPTOM DUMP OUTPUT 018
018 USER COMPLETION CODE=0502
018 TIME=13.06.22 SEQ=00398 CPU=0000 ASID=002A
018 PSW AT TIME OF ERROR 078D0000 80035A48 ILC 2 INTC 0D
018 ACTIVE LOAD MODULE ADDRESS=00034000 OFFSET=00001A48
018 NAME=FDRSNAPA
018 DATA AT PSW 00035A42 - 411001F6 0A0D9110 10104700
018 AR/GR 0: 8094FB3E/00000000 1: 00000000/000001F6
018 2: 00000000/006BFD20 3: 00000000/441B24B8
018 4: 00000000/006CDF44 5: 00000000/00029000
018 6: 00000000/00036C50 7: 00000000/00006604
018 8: 00000000/00006550 9: 00000000/00037000
018 A: 00000000/00036000 B: 00000000/80035A42
018 C: 00000000/00035000 D: 00000000/00034000
018 E: 00000000/80036ABE F: 00000000/00000000
018 END OF SYMPTOM DUMP
13.06.40 JOB07750 IEA993I SYSMDUMP TAKEN TO XXXX.SLUPCOPY.SYSMDUMP
13.06.40 JOB07750 SLS7075I TCB USER CC=0000, SYSTEM CC=0378
13.06.40 JOB07750 SLS7108I DPV RESTORE REQUIRED
13.06.40 JOB07750 SLS7172I CDS DPV RESTORE SUCCESSFUL
13.06.40 JOB07750 SLS7076I DETACH SUCCESSFUL
13.06.40 JOB07750 SLS7077I MAINLINE DEQ SUCCESSFUL FOR SLSCNTL DD
13.06.40 JOB07750 SLS7078I MAINLINE CLOSE SUCCESSFUL FOR SLSCNTL DD
13.06.40 JOB07750 SLS7035E POINT-IN-TIME COPY INVALID
13.06.40 JOB07750 SLS7111I SLUPCOPY VERSION 6.20 PROCESSING ENDS
13.06.41 JOB07750 - SYSTEM RELEASE: SP7.0.5 HBB7708
13.06.41 JOB07750 - --TIMINGS (MINS.)-- ---PAGING COUNTS---
13.06.41 JOB07750 -JOBNAME STEPNAME PROCSTEP RC EXCP CPU SRB CLOCK SERV PG PAGE SWAP VIO SWAPS
13.06.41 JOB07750 -XXXXPFDR COPY 12 12066 .00 .00 .3 17098 0 44 0 0 0
13.06.41 JOB07750 IEF404I XXXXPFDR - ENDED - TIME=13.06.41
13.06.41 JOB07750 -XXXXPFDR ENDED. NAME=XXXXXXXXX TOTAL CPU TIME= .00 TOTAL ELAPSED TIME= .3
13.06.41 JOB07750 $HASP395 XXXXPFDR ENDED
----- JES2 JOB STATISTICS -----
- 29 MAR 2007 JOB EXECUTION DATE
- 19 CARDS READ
- 149 SYSOUT PRINT RECORDS
- 0 SYSOUT PUNCH RECORDS
- 9 SYSOUT SPOOL KBYTES
- 0.35 MINUTES EXECUTION TIME
1 //XXXXPFDR JOB (XXXXXX),XXXXXXXXX, JOB07750
// CLASS=A,
// MSGCLASS=1
//*
//*-----*//
//* FDRSNAP PIT COPY
//*-----*//
2 //COPY EXEC PGM=SLUPCOPY,REGION=4M,
// PARM='HSCX,COPY,FDR,OPT(RR) '
3 //STEPLIB DD DSN=XXXX.LINKLIB,DISP=SHR
4 //SLSCNTL DD DSN=XXXX.SOS610.SLSCNTL,DISP=SHR
5 //SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*

```

```

EA995I SYMPTOM DUMP OUTPUT
USER COMPLETION CODE=0502
TIME=13.06.22 SEQ=00398 CPU=0000 ASID=002A
PSW AT TIME OF ERROR 078D0000 80035A48 ILC 2 INTC 0D
ACTIVE LOAD MODULE ADDRESS=00034000 OFFSET=00001A48
NAME=FDRSNAPA
DATA AT PSW 00035A42 - 411001F6 0A0D9110 10104700
AR/GR 0: 8094FB3E/00000000 1: 00000000/000001F6
2: 00000000/006BFD20 3: 00000000/441B24B8
4: 00000000/006CDF44 5: 00000000/00029000
6: 00000000/00036C50 7: 00000000/00006604
8: 00000000/00006550 9: 00000000/00037000
A: 00000000/00036000 B: 00000000/80035A42
C: 00000000/00035000 D: 00000000/00034000
E: 00000000/80036ABE F: 00000000/00000000
END OF SYMPTOM DUMP
IEA993I SYSMDUMP TAKEN TO XXXX.SLUPCOPY.SYSMDUMP
IEF285I SYS07088.T130622.RA000.XXXXPFDR.R0100609 KEPT
IEF285I VOL SER NOS= SW8A45.
IEF285I SYS07088.T130622.RA000.XXXXPFDR.R0100610 KEPT
IEF285I VOL SER NOS= SW8A45.
IEF142I XXXXPFDR COPY - STEP WAS EXECUTED - COND CODE 0012
IEF285I XXXX.LINKLIB KEPT
IEF285I VOL SER NOS= TSO020.
IEF285I XXXX.SOS610.SLSCNTL KEPT
IEF285I VOL SER NOS= SW8A45.
IEF285I XXXX.XXXXPFDR.JOB07750.D0000102.? SYSOUT
IEF285I XXXX.SLUPCOPY.SYSMDUMP DELETED
IEF285I VOL SER NOS= SW8D12.
IEF285I XXXX.XXXXPFDR.JOB07750.D0000101.? SYSIN
*****
* DEVICE DEVICE EXCP *
* DDNAME CLASS ADDRESS COUNT *
* ----- *
* STEPLIB DASD 3EC4 00000002 *
* SLSCNTL DASD 8A45 00000004 *
* SYSPRINT JES2 00000000 *
* SYSMDUMP DASD 8D12 00011927 *
* TAPE1 JES2 00000000 *
* SYSIN JES2 00000000 *
* D#SW8A45 DASD 8A45 00000004 *
* T#SW8A45 DASD 8A45 00000000 *
*****
IEF373I STEP/COPY /START 2007088.1306
IEF374I STEP/COPY /STOP 2007088.1306 CPU 0MIN 00.57SEC SRB 0MIN 00.16SEC VIRT 228K SYS 300K EXT 1808K
SYS 7356K
IEF375I JOB/XXXXPFDR/START 2007088.1306
IEF376I JOB/XXXXPFDR/STOP 2007088.1306 CPU 0MIN 00.57SEC SRB 0MIN 00.16SEC
1FDR001 FDR INSTANT BACKUP - FDRSNAP VER. 5.4/30P - INNOVATION DATA PROCESSING DATE=2007.088 PAGE 1
0FDR303 CARD IMAGE -- SNAP TYPE=FDR,ENQ=OFF
FDR303 CARD IMAGE -- MOUNT VOL=SW8A45,SNAPUNIT=8D14
0FDR040 VOLUME IN USE - 002 OPENED DCBS
FDR007 STARTING TIME OF SNAPSHOT DUMP -- 13.06.22 -- UNIT=3390 ,IN=D#SW8A45,OUTPUT=TAPE1
FDR230** FDRSNAP ERROR - UNIT=8D14 REASON=8 - TARGET UNIT IS NOT OFFLINE
FDR997** FDR ABNORMALLY TERMINATED VOL=SW8A45
FDR319** FDR OPERATION ABNORMALLY TERMINATED VOL=SW8A45 COMP CODE=S000 U0502
FDR998** FDR COMPLETED WITH ERRORS

```


Index

A

ABEND dumps 4
AUDIT 110, 129

B

BACKup utility
 description 11, 24
 function 11, 24
backup, CDS 11, 24

C

Cartridge Access Port (CAP)
 clearing RECOVERY status on Display Cap command
 68
cartridges
 entering into the LSM
 duplicate VOLSERS 67
 with missing or unreadable labels 67
CD See Cartridge Drive
CDS See control data set
CDS Disable command 29, 30
CDS See Control Data Set
COMMPath command and control statement
 usage 70
communications
 restoring 70
control data set (CDS)
 rename procedure 30
 swapping 32
copy CDS (with rename) 30

D

Database Heartbeat (DHB) record
 reassigning CDSs using CDS Enable/Disable 29, 30
diagnostics
 program dumps 72
Display command 72
dump

program 72

E

entering cartridges into the LSM
 duplicate and unreadable VOLSERS 67
 with missing or unreadable labels 67

F

freeing an allocated CAP 69

H

history, event (GTF tracing) 4
host
 restoring host-to-host communications 70
Host Software Component (HSC)
 diagnostic commands
 Display 72
 restoring host-to-host communications 70
how to clear CAP status of RECOVERY 68

L

labels
 entering cartridges with missing or unreadable labels 67
Library Storage Module (LSM)
 entering cartridges with missing or unreadable labels 67
 entering duplicate VOLSERS 67

M

migration
 demand 90
missing or unreadable labels 67
move CDS (with rename) 30
MVC pools
 VT Display command 80, 81
MVCs
 space reclamation
 demand 90

O

ORH See Overdue Response Handler
Overdue Response Handler (ORH)
 operator response required for mount, dismount, move,
 and swap requests 71
 overview 71

R

recovery
 clearing RECOVERY status on Display Cap command
 68
 freeing an allocated CAP 69
 restoring host-to-host communications 70
RECOVERY status on a CAP, clearing 68
recovery utility 148
relocating a CDS 30

- renaming control data sets 30
- reports
 - BACKup utility 11, 24
- resolving common problems 138
- REStore utility
 - reasons for running 34
- restoring host-to-host communications services 70
- RTDs
 - managing 94
 - sharing 94
 - varying online and offline 94
- RTV utility 148

S

- scratch
 - volumes
 - insufficient in ACS 5
- scratch subpools
 - VT Display command 76
- SET command
 - SET SLIDRIVS
 - procedure 53, 114
- sharing
 - RTDs 94
 - transports 94
- space reclamation
 - demand 90
- swapping a CDS 32

T

- transports
 - sharing 94
 - varying online and offline 94

U

- utilities
 - BACKup 11, 24

V

- VSM
 - managing
 - demand migrations, recalls, and reclamations 90
 - resolving common problems 138
 - sharing transports with MVS 94
 - VTSSs 82
 - VTV migration
 - demand 91
 - VTV recall
 - demand 91
- VTCS
 - utilities
 - AUDIT 110, 129
 - recovery 148
 - RTV 148

- VTV migration
 - demand 91
- VTDs
 - VT Display command 76
- VTSSs
 - managing 82
- VTVs
 - demand migrations 90
 - migration
 - poor performance 139
 - poor migration performance 139
 - poor mount performance 138
 - recall
 - demand 90

